FURUNO

OPERATOR'S MANUAL

SSB RADIOTELEPHONE

FS-1570
FS-2570
Model **FS-5070**

FURUNO ELECTRIC CO., LTD.

www.furuno.com

ECF

(Elemental Chlorine Free)

The paper used in this manual
is elemental chlorine free.

FURUNO ELECTRIC CO., LTD.

· FURUNO Authorized Distributor/Dealer

A : NOV. 2006
E : AUG. 03, 2012

00016050114

IMPORTANT NOTICE

General

- This manual has been authored with simplified grammar, to meet the needs of international users.

- The operator of this equipment must read and follow the descriptions in this manual. Wrong operation or maintenance can cancel the warranty or cause injury.

- Do not copy any part of this manual without written permission from FURUNO.

- If this manual is lost or worn, contact your dealer about replacement.

- The contents of this manual and equipment specifications can change without notice.

- The example screens (or illustrations) shown in this manual can be different from the screens you see on your display. The screens you see depend on your system configuration and equipment settings.

- Save this manual for future reference.

- Any modification of the equipment (including software) by persons not authorized by FURUNO will cancel the warranty.

- All brand and product names are trademarks, registered trademarks or service marks of their respective holders.

How to discard this product

Discard this product according to local regulations for the disposal of industrial waste. For disposal in the USA, see the homepage of the Electronics Industries Alliance (http://www.eiae.org/) for the correct method of disposal.

How to discard a used battery

Some FURUNO products have a battery(ies). To see if your product has a battery, see the chapter on Maintenance. Follow the instructions below if a battery is used. Tape the + and - terminals of battery before disposal to prevent fire, heat generation caused by short circuit.

In the European Union

The crossed-out trash can symbol indicates that all types of batteries must not be discarded in standard trash, or at a trash site. Take the used batteries to a battery collection site according to your national legislation and the Batteries Directive 2006/66/EU.
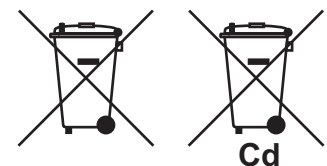
In the USA

The Mobius loop symbol (three chasing arrows) indicates that Ni-Cd and lead-acid rechargeable batteries must be recycled. Take the used batteries to a battery collection site according to local laws.

In the other countries

There are no international standards for the battery recycle symbol. The number of symbols can increase when the other countries make their own recycling symbols in the future.

i

⚠ SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

The user and installer must read the appropriate safety instructions before attempting to install or operate the equipment.
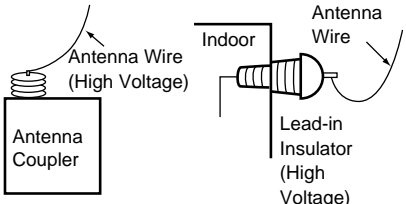
⚠ DANGER	Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
⚠ WARNING	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
⚠ CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.

⚠ Warning, Caution	🚫 Prohibitive Action	❗ Mandatory Action

⚠ DANGER

Never touch the SSB antenna, antenna coupler or lead-in insulator when the SSB radiotelephone is transmitting.

High voltage which will cause death or serious injury is present at the locations shown in the illustration below when the SSB radiotelephone is transmitting.

Antenna Wire
(High Voltage)

Indoor

Antenna Wire

Antenna Coupler

Lead-in Insulator (High Voltage)

⚠ WARNING

Do not open the equipment.

Only qualified personnel should work inside the equipment.

Immediately turn off the power at the switchboard if water leaks into the equipment or something is dropped into the equipment.

Continued use of the equipment can cause fire or electrical shock. Contact a FURUNO agent for service.

Do not disassemble or modify the equipment.

Fire, electrical shock or serious injury can result.

⚠ WARNING

Immediately turn off the power at the switchboard if the equipment is emitting smoke or fire.

Continued use of the equipment can cause fire or electrical shock. Contact a FURUNO agent for service.

Do not place liquid-filled containers on the top of the equipment.

Fire or electrical shock can result if a liquid spills into the equipment.

Do not operate the equipment with wet hands.

Electrical shock can result.

Turn off the power immediately if you feel the equipment is behaving abnormally.

Turn off the power at the switchboard if the equipment becomes abnormally warm or is emitting odd noises. Contact a FURUNO dealer or agent for advice.

Make sure no rain or water splash leaks into the equipment.

Fire or electrical shock can result if water leaks in the equipment.

Use the proper fuse.

Use of the wrong fuse can cause fire or electrical shock.

⚠ WARNING

🚫 **Do not operate the [DISTRESS] button except in case of a life-endangering situation on your vessel.**

Operating the [DISTRESS] button transmits the distress alert. Accidental transmission may prevent search and rescue operations for actual emergency. If the distress alert is accidentally transmitted, contact the nearest station to cancel the alert.

⚠ CAUTION

❗ If the distress alert is accidentally transmitted, contact the nearest coast station and inform them of the accidental transmission, providing the following data:

a) Ship's name
b) Ship's call sign and DSC number
c) Position at time of transmission
d) Time of transmission

🚫 **Do not apply strong pressure to the LCD, which is made of glass.**

Injury can result if the LCD breaks.

WARNING LABEL(S)

Do not remove any safety label.
If a label is missing or damaged, contact a FURUNO agent or dealer about replacement.

⚠ **DANGER** Hazardous voltage. Can shock, burn, or cause death. Do not touch antenna wire, insulator and terminal.

Name: Danger Label
Type: 05-062-0213-0
Code No.: 100-199-230

ANTENNA COUPLER

⚠ WARNING ⚠
To avoid electrical shock, do not remove cover. No user-serviceable parts inside.
⚠   ⚠

Name: Warning Label (1)
Type: 86-003-1011
Code No.: 100-236-231

TRANSCEIVER UNIT

iii

DISTRESS ALERT MESSAGE PROCEDURE

Below is the procedure for transmitting a distress alert via radiotelephone. Transmit the distress alert when a life-endangering situation occurs on your vessel.

1. Open the **DISTRESS** button cover and press the **DISTRESS** button more than four seconds to show the following display, then release the **DISTRESS** button.

```
Distress button
pressed!
NATURE: UNDESIGNATED
POS:  12°34.0000 N
      123°45.0000E   AT 12:34
TELEPHONE           2182.0 kHz
 DSC FREQ  :        2187.5kHz
        KEEP PRESSED FOR 2S
```
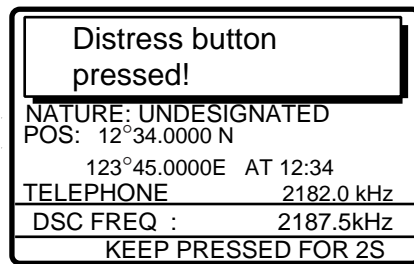
2. After the distress message has been transmitted, the following displays appear in order.

```
Wait for distress
acknowledgement.

NATURE: UNDESIGNATED
POS:  12 34.5678N
      123 45.6789E      AT 12:34
TELEPHONE
DSC FREQ  :    2. 4. 6. 8. 12. 16. M
TIME TO GO: 2M10S    RESENDING
```

When distress message is acknowledged by coast station (usually within 1 min to 2 min 45 seconds)

```
Distress acknowledge
message received.
     CANCEL: STOP ALARM
NATURE: UNDESIGNATED
POS:  12 34.5678N   DIST: 0nm
      123 45.6789E   AT 12:34
TELEPHONE    2182.0 kHz
```

3. The audio alarm sounds; press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm.
4. Communicate with the coast station via radiotelephone as below.

Say MAYDAY three times.
Say "This is …" name of your vessel and your message sign three times.
Give nature of distress and assistance needed.
Give description of your vessel (type, number of persons onboard, etc.) and any other information which may aid in rescue.

Note: If the distress message is not acknowledged by coast station, it will be transmitted again after 3 min 30 seconds to 4 min 30 seconds.

For IC-302 (option) operation

1. Open the **DISTRESS** button cover and press the **DISTRESS** button more than four seconds.
2. After the distress message has been transmitted, the length of the beep changes from short to long.
3. Release the **DISTRESS** button.
4. Do step 4 shown in the Distress Alert Message Procedure above with the radiotelephone.

CANCELING DISTRESS ALERT

You can cancel the distress call while
it is being sent or while waiting for its acknowledgement as follows.

1. Press the **CANCEL** key.
   When the following message appears, do the following.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  Distress Proc. is          │
│              Paused.        │
│                             │
│  █RESUME█  RESEND  CANCEL   │
│                             │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│  DSC FREQ   :               │
│                2187.5 kHz   │
│  TIME TO GO :     0S        │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```
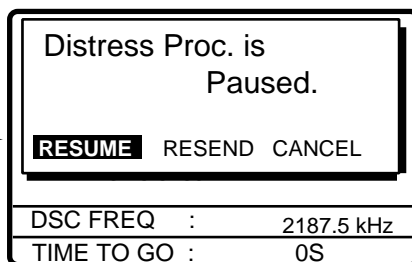
2. Rotate the ENTER knob to choose CANCEL at the screen, and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  Warning:                   │
│   Distress Cancel Step      │
│                             │
│     YES          █NO█       │
│                             │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│  DSC FREQ   :               │
│                2187.5 kHz   │
│  TIME TO GO :     0S        │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose YES, and then push the **ENTER** knob to show the following screen.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ Distress Cancellation Proc. │
│ Select frequency            │
│ and push ENTER.             │
│                             │
│   Cancel: Back to pause menu.│
│                             │
│ █2M-2187.5 kHz█   8M-8414.5kHz│
│ 4M-4207.5kHz   12M-12577.0kHz│
│ 6M-6312.0kHz   16M-16804.5kHz│
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

The cancellation message is transmitted over the same frequency used to transmit the distress call.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ Now Transmitting  Distress  │
│           Cancellation Message│
│                             │
│                             │
│ █2M-2187.5 kHz█   8M-8414.5kHz│
│ 4M-4207.5kHz   12M-12577.0kHz│
│ 6M-6312.0kHz   16M-16804.5kHz│
└─────────────────────────────┘
```
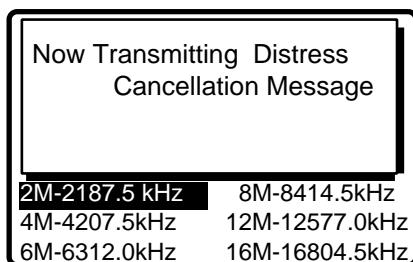
4. Communicate, via radiotelephone, with the coast station.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│  Send cancel msg. by voice      │
│              on 2182.0 kHz.     │
│                                 │
│                                 │
│   Push any key: Go next step.   │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ *2M-2187.5 kHz      8M-8414.5kHz │
│ [4M-4207.5kHz]      12M-12577.0kHz │
│ 6M-6312.0kHz       16M-16804.5kHz │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

Asterisk marks the frequency over which
the cancellation call was transmitted..

5. Press any key.
   If you used other frequencies to send the distress call, cancel distress call on those
   frequencies by repeating steps 3 to 5.

When all cancellation is completed, the RT display appears.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

FOREWORD

Thank you for purchasing the FS-1570/2570/5070 SSB Radiotelephone. We are confident you will discover why FURUNO has become synonymous with quality and reliability.

Since 1948, FURUNO Electric Company has enjoyed an enviable reputation for innovative and dependable marine electronics equipment. This dedication to excellence is furthered by our extensive global network of agents and dealers.

Please carefully read and follow the safety information and operating and maintenance instructions set forth in this manual before attempting to operate the equipment and conduct any maintenance. Your unit will perform to the utmost of its ability only if it is operated and maintained in accordance with the correct procedures.

Features

The FS-1570/2570/5070 is an MF/HF SSB Radiotelephone with a built-in DSC/Watch Receiver, all contained in a surprisingly compact cabinet. An NBDP (Narrow Band Direct Printing) Terminal Unit is optionally available.

Data is displayed on a large, easy-to-read backlit LCD. Operation is simplified by the use of few keys and easy-to-follow menus.

The built-in DSC/watch receiver produces and receives digital selective calls for quick and efficient establishment of distress, urgency, safety and routine communications with other ships and coast stations that install any MF/HF DSC facilities.

The main features are

General

Fully meets the following regulations: IMO A.806(19), IMO A.694(17), IMO A. 813(19), MSC 68(68) Annex 3, IEC 61097-3 Annex A, IEC 61162-1 (2000), IEC 60945 (2002), EN 300 373-1 (2002), ETS 300 067A1(1998), EN 300 338(2004), EN 301 033 (2005), ITU-R M.493-11, M.541-9, M.476-5, M.491-1, M.492-6, M.625-3, M.1173-3.

- Automatic entry of position with manual override

Optional printer can automatically print out DSC and NBDP received messages and test results.

SSB

- Receiving voice communication, telex and AM.

- Facsimile signal receiving

- Simplified setting of channel and frequency.

DSC/watch receiver

- Distress, urgency, safety and routine calling

- Scanning of DSC frequencies for distress and general calls on MF/HF

- File editing capability for readiness in case of emergency

- PSTN (Public Switched Telephone Network) capability standard

- Log stores 50 each of latest ordinary, distress and transmitted messages, in separate memory blocks.

NBDP (with optional NBDP Terminal Unit IB-583)

- Automatic error-free telex communications and distress message in compliance with GMDSS requirements

- LCD monitor and keyboard comply with ITU regulations

- Pop-up menus for user-friendly operation

- Memory for 256 operator-customized channels

- Real time message printing with Printer PP-510

Program Number

FS-1570/2570/5070

PC board	Program No.	Ver. No.	Remarks
MAIN	0550225	01	Main program
PANEL	0550222	01	Program for the control display
DSP (DSC)	0550207	01	MODEM Program for DSC
NBDP	0550208	01	MODEM Program for NBDP

Terminal Unit IB-581 (optional unit, for FS-1570/2570 only)

PC Board	Program No.	Ver. No	Remarks
TERMINAL	0550210	1.22	

Terminal Unit IB-583 (optional unit)

Program	Program No.	Ver. No	Remarks
TERMINAL	0550209	1.22	

About the TFT LCD: The TFT LCD is constructed using the latest LCD techniques, and displays99.99% of its pixels. The remaining 0.01%of the pixels may drop out or blink, however this is not an indication of malfunction.

SYSTEM CONFIGURATIONS

FS-1570

Standard configuration is shown with solid line.

```
DSC DISTRESS
SAFETY FREQUENCY
                    #

# = 2.6 m    PREAMP UNIT          ANTENNA COUPLER
  whip       FAX-5                AT-1560-15
  antenna

                                                    LOUDSPEAKER
          EPFS (GNSS)                                SEM-21Q

                                          CONTROL        HANDSET
                                          UNIT           HS-2003
          INCOMING       CONTROLLER 1     FS-2571C
          INDICATOR
          IC-303-DSC                                     PRINTER
                                                         PP-510

          MIF EQUIPMENT  TRANSCEIVER UNIT                INTERFACE      24VDC
                         FS-1570T           NBDP         IF-8500*
                                            TERMINAL UNIT
                                            IB-583/IB-581   * = Required for NBDP Terminal
          DISTRESS ALERT UNIT                                and DSC to share printer.
          IC-302-DSC                        24VDC

          BK INTERFACE                  CONTROL UNIT    HANDSET
          BK-300       CONTROLLER 2     FS-2571C        HS-2003


                       AC/DC POWER         POWER STATUS
                       SUPPLY UNIT         MONITOR
                       PR-300              PSM-01


              24VDC        100-115/200-230VAC
                           1φ, 50/60Hz
```

Unit	Category
Preamp Unit	Exposed to weather
Antenna Coupler	Exposed to weather
Other Units	Protected from weather

xiv

FS-2570

Standard configuration is shown with solid line.

DSC DISTRESS SAFETY FREQUENCY

DSC ROUTINE FREQUENCY

= 2.6 m whip antenna

PREAMP UNIT FAX-5

PREAMP UNIT FAX-5

ANTENNA COUPLER AT-1560-25

EPFS (GNSS)

W/R BOARD

LOUDSPEAKER SEM-21Q

CONTROLLER 1

CONTROL UNIT FS-2571C

HANDSET HS-2003

INCOMING INDICATOR IC-303-DSC

PRINTER PP-510

TRANSCEIVER UNIT FS-2570T

MIF EQUIPMENT

NBDP TERMINAL UNIT IB-583/IB-581

INTERFACE IF-8500*

24VDC

* = Required for NBDP Terminal and DSC to share printer.

DISTRESS ALERT UNIT IC-302-DSC

DC24V

BK INTERFACE BK-300

CONTROLLER 2

CONTROL UNIT FS-2571C

HANDSET HS-2003

AC/DC POWER SUPPLY UNIT PR-850A

POWER STATUS MONITOR PSM-01

24VDC

100-115/200-230VAC
1φ, 50/60Hz

Unit	Category
Preamp Unit	Exposed to weather
Antenna Coupler	Exposed to weather
Other Units	Protected from weather

SYSTEM CONFIGURATIONS

FS-5070

Standard configuration is shown with solid line.

Unit	Category
Preamp Unit	Exposed to weather
Antenna Coupler	Exposed to weather
Other Units	Protected from weather

1. OPERATIONAL OVERVIEW

1.1 Controls
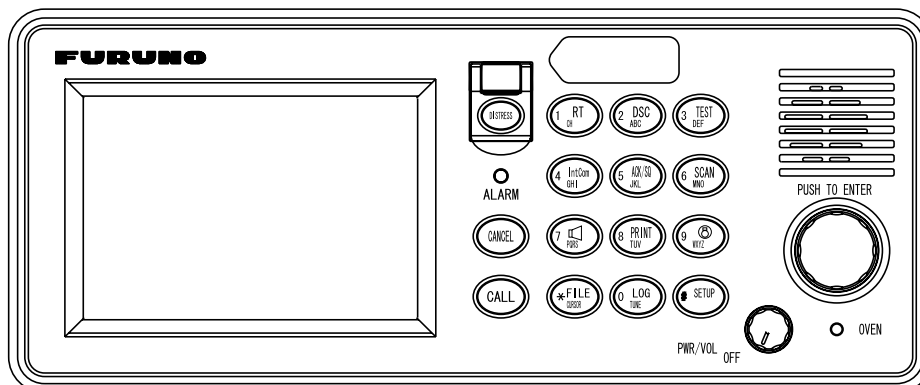
Description of controls

Control	Function
PWR/VOL knob	• Turns the power on/off. • Adjusts volume.
DISTRESS button	Press and hold down the button more than four (4) seconds to transmit the distress alert.
CALL key	Transmits DSC messages.
ENTER knob	Rotate to choose menu items; push to register selection.
CANCEL key	• Cancels wrong data. • Restores previous menu. • Silences audio alarm. • Cancels transmission, printing. • Erases error message.
1/ RT/CH key	Switches to the radiotelephone (RT) screen. Press and hold down more than five (5) seconds to set SSB: 2182.0 kHz/J3E.
2/DSC key	Composes DSC TX message.
3/TEST key	Executes daily test and TX self-check.
4/IntCom key	Turns on/off the intercom with other Control Unit FS-2571C.
5/ ACK/SQ key	DSC: Switches automatic and manual acknowledge alternately. Radiotelephone: Turns squelch on and off.
6/SCAN key	• Displays DSC screen. • Starts/stops scanning of DSC routine frequencies, on the DSC standby screen.

7/◁ key	Turns loudspeaker on/off.
	(Note that this key does not silence the distress or urgency alarm.)
8/PRINT key	Prints communications log files, current screen (except DSC standby screen and radiotelephone screen) and test results.
9/❋ key	Adjusts panel dimmer and LCD contrast.
*/FILE/CURSOR key	• Opens the send message file list from the DSC standby screen, to send stored message.
	• Shifts cursor.
0/LOG/TUNE key	• Long press: Tunes antenna in radiotelephone operation.
	• Momentary press: Displays message logs.
#/SETUP key	Opens the main menu.
ALARM lamp	• Flashes in red for distress and urgency messages.
	• Flashes in green for safety and routine messages.
OVEN lamp	Lights (in green) when mains switchboard is on.

1.2   Turning the Power On/Off

Turn the **PWR/VOL** knob clockwise at the right-hand side of the control unit to power the system. The RT screen appears.

Rotate the **PWR/VOL** knob counterclockwise to turn the system off.

In the dual control unit system, the control unit connected to the CONTROLLER 1 port on the transceiver unit has priority and it controls the power for both the No.1 and No. 2 control units. The power switch of the No. 2 control unit powers on/off the No. 2 control unit only.

Note: Turn on power at switchboard more than five minutes before turning on this equipment.

1.3   Radiotelephone (RT) Screen

Turn the power on, or press the **1/ RT/CH** key to show the radiotelephone screen. This is where you set up the transceiver unit, and communicate by voice or telex.

```
CH:           200        DR
Tx:   2182.0   kHz
Rx:   2182.00 kHz  ◁ıl

SSB  SIMP  HIGH  FAST  NB  SQ
SEN ▄▄▄▄□            S ▄▄□
 IA ▄▄▄▄▄□  10.0A

MMSI xxxxxxxxx
POS  35°00.0000N              UTC 00:00
      135°00.0000E            EPFS 23:59
```
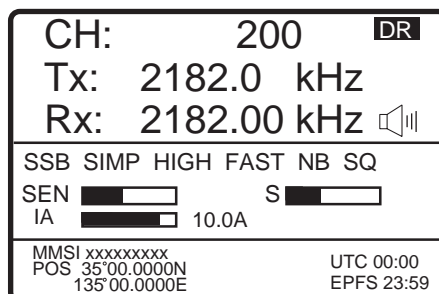
Radiotelephone (RT) screen

Indication	Meaning
CH	Channel
Tx	TX frequency (Tx: while transmitting)
Rx	RX frequency
✉	Blinks when there are messages not read yet.
DR/DS	DR: Distress received, DS: Distress sent
🔊/🔇	Speaker on/off
SSB/TLX/AM	Class of Emission
SIMP/SDUP/DUP	Communication mode (SIMP: simplex, SDUP: semi-duplex, DUP: full-duplex
HIGH/MID/LOW1/LOW2	Output power (LOW2: FS-5070 only, minimum output power)
FAST/SLOW/OFF (AGC)	Auto gain control (FAST: high-speed, SLOW: low-speed, OFF: no adjustment)
NB	Noise blanker
SQ	Squelch
SEN	Receiving sensitivity
S	S-meter, displays the strength of received signal.
IA/IC/VC/RF	Transceiver unit status (IA: antenna current, IC: collector current, VC: collector voltage, RF: PA output)
MMSI	Own ship's ID (nine digits)
POS	Own ship's position
EPFS/MAN	Own ship's position data source EPFS: GPS navigator MAN: manual (See section 6.6.)

1.4 DSC Standby Screen

The DSC standby screen may be displayed by pressing the **6/SCAN** key. This screen scans and receives the distress and routine frequencies, and sends the acknowledgement for the received message automatically.

Acknowledge status
(AUTO ACK or MANUAL ACK)

Shown with nine digits.

```
WATCH KEEPING        AUTO ACK
  DISTRESS  WR1    MMSI xxxxxxxxx
   2187.5    4207.5    6312.0
   16804.5   12577.0   8414.5
  ROUTINE  TRX
   2177.0    4219.5    6331.0
   16903.0   12657.0   8436.5
   35°00.0000N          UTC 00:00
   135°00.0000E         MAN 23:59
```

Maximum six distress and routine frequencies scanned in clockwise direction, and frequency currently being scanned is highlighted. One cycle is completed in less than two seconds.

Position and time. "EPFS" shown when these are input automatically.

TRX: transceiver unit
WR2: The optional antenna for the routine frequency

DSC standby screen

1.5 Control Unit Dimmer, Contrast

You can adjust the dimmer and contrast of the control unit.

1. Press the **9/⊛** key to show the dimmer/contrast adjustment window.

```
DIMMER          (1~8)
▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮□   6
CONTRAST      (40~63)
▮▮▮▮▮▮□        45
          EXIT:[CANCEL]
```
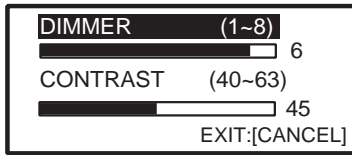
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DIMMER or CONTRAST, whichever you want to adjust, and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
DIMMER (1-8)
◄ ▮▮▮▮▮▮□ ► 6
```
```
CONTRAST (40-63)
◄ ▮▮▮▮▮▮▮□ ►55
```
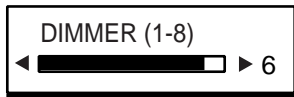
Dimmer adjustment window   Contrast adjustment window
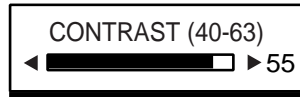
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to adjust and then push the **ENTER** knob.
4. To quit, push the **CANCEL** key.

1.6 Loudspeaker

The alarm beeps (other than distress communication) can be turned on or off.

1. Press the 7/◁ key to alternately disable or enable the loudspeaker and the alarm generated for routine messages. SPEAKER ON or SPEAKER OFF appears with each press.
2. Rotate the PWR/VOL knob to adjust volume of loudspeaker (cw: volume up, ccw: volume down).

1.7 Setting Scan Frequencies

The DSC screen scans multiple routine frequencies according to operator-set interval. For how to set frequency to scan, see section 6.13.
Note that voice and telex communication are not available when scanning. (However, they are available when the system is equipped with the optional watch receiver.)

1. Press the **6/SCAN** key to show the DSC screen. Scanning starts.
2. Press the **6/SCAN** key again when the desired frequency is chosen to stop the cursor. You can scan only the frequency chosen by cursor.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to move the cursor.
4. Press the **6/SCAN** key to restart the scanning.

1.8   Setting for Auto Acknowledgement

Individual, position, polling and test calls can be acknowledged automatically or manually.

Press the **5/ACK/SQ** key to switch the acknowledge mode between automatic and manual alternately. The message AUTO ACK or MANUAL ACK appears on the DSC standby screen with each press of the key.

Note: When own ship's communication is high priority, set to MANUAL ACK.

The auto acknowledgement is not sent in the following cases:

*   The category of a received message is DISTRESS, URGENCY or SAFETY.

*   The communication mode is NBDP-FEC, NBDP-ARQ or DATA.

*   Com Freq is NO INFO.

*   ECC is NG (No Good).

*   The handset is off hook.

1.9   System Characteristics

1.9.1   Equipment priority

Equipment priority order is as below.
1. Control unit sending distress alert
2. Control unit 1 – routine use
3. Control unit 2 – routine use
4. NBDP

1.9.2   Controls become inoperative

Controls become inoperative in the following conditions:

*   When the other control unit goes OFF HOOK on RT mode in the two control units system.

*   When the other control unit switches to the DSC mode in the two controls system.

*   NBDP is scanning or communicating.

*   Distress alert or distress relay is transmitted.

*   Call other than distress is transmitted (transmission time about 8 sec.) If it becomes necessary to unlock the keyboard before the message is transmitted, press the **CANCEL** key to cancel the call.

1.9.3   Controls become operative

Controls become operative in the following conditions:

*   **DISTRESS** button is pressed.

*   Control unit having higher priority is operated.

- The other control unit in two controls unit system goes ON HOOK.

- NBDP stops scanning or communicating.

1.9.4 Automatic setting of working frequency

The radiotelephone automatically sets working frequency in the following conditions:

- ABLE ACK is sent in response to individual call.

- Your ship receives ABLE ACK in response to own ship-initiated individual call.

- *Your ship receives ABLE ACK with COM. Frequency automatically changes in response to own ship-initiated individual call.

- Your ship sends geographical area call.

- Your ship sends distress relay.

- Your ship sends distress alert.

- *Your ship receives group call.

- *Your ship receives geographic area call.

- *Your ship receives distress alert.

*: When receiving a call with different frequency from the setting, the following window appears.
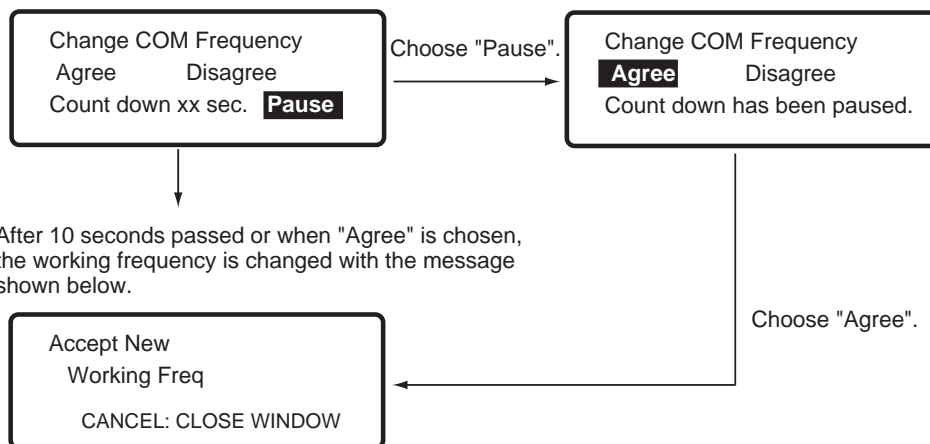
1.10 Intercom

The built-in intercom permits voice communications between two control units.

1. Off hook the handset at the radiotelephone screen.
2. Press the **IntCom** key to show INTERCOM on the display. The called party's control unit rings.
3. When the called party picks up their handset, start communications.
4. Hang up the handset to turn the intercom off. The indication INTERCOM disappears from the screen.

2. SSB RADIOTELEPHONE

You can use the SSB communication in the RT (radiotelephone) mode. Press the **RT/CH** key to show the RT screen.

2.1 Choosing Class of Emission

There are three emission modes, SSB, TLX and AM.
•SSB: Single Sideband
•TLX: Telex (see chapter 7 to 10.)
•AM: AM (You cannot transmit in the AM mode.)

At the radiotelephone screen, choose class of emission as follows:

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to highlight the emission mode (default: SSB) and then push the **ENTER** knob. When rotating the **ENTER** knob clockwise, the cursor moves from "CH" to downward.

Emission mode →

```
CH:          200
Tx:   2182.0  kHz
Rx:   2182.00 kHz 📢||
[SSB]   HIGH FAST NB  SQ
 TLX              S ▮▮
 AM       10.0A
  MMSI xxxxxxxx          UTC 00:00
POS 35°00.0000N         EPFS 23:59
    135°00.0000E
```
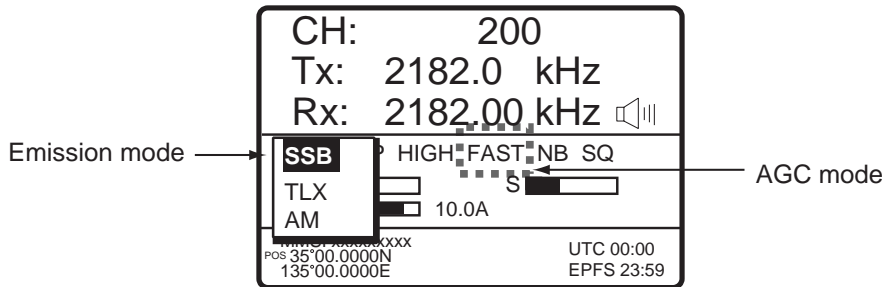
← AGC mode

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose mode desired and then push the **ENTER** knob. AGC is automatically selected according to emission mode.
   • SSB : AGC FAST
   •TLX: AGC OFF
   •AM: AGC SLOW

3. However, you may change it as below.

4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose AGC mode and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
CH:          200
Tx:   2182.0  kHz
Rx:   2182.00 kHz 📢||
SSB  SIMP  HIGH [OFF] B  SQ
 SEN ▮▮▯             SLOW ▯
 IA        10.(     FAST
  MMSI xxxxxxxx          UTC 00:00
POS 35°00.0000N         EPFS 23:59
    135°00.0000E
```
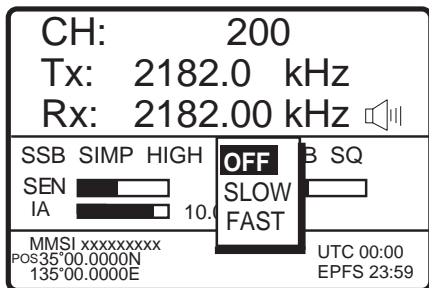
5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose OFF, SLOW or FAST as appropriate and then push the **ENTER** knob.

2.2 Choosing Channel, Frequency

Choose the channel or transmitting frequency to use for the SSB. This setting can be done both when the handset is on and off hook.

Note: To set the SSB radiotelephone to 2182 kHz/J3E, press the **RT/CH** key more than five seconds.

Choosing channel

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose CH and then push the **ENTER** knob.
   You can show the channel window by pushing also **1/CH** key.

```
CH:        2 00
Tx:    2         Hz
Rx:    2182.00 kHz  ◁▥

SSB  SIMP  HIGH  FAST  NB  SQ
SEN ▮▮▮▮▯▯            S ▮▮▯▯▯▯
IA  ▮▮▮▮▮▮▯  10.0A

MMSI xxxxxxxxx
POS 35°00.0000N        UTC 00:00
    135°00.0000E       EPFS 23:59
```
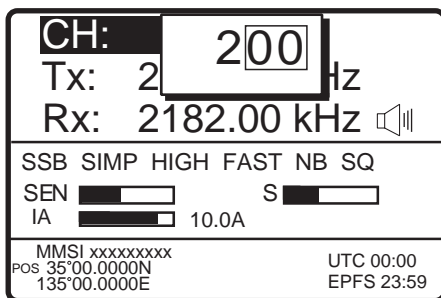
2. Channel can be entered directly with the numeric keys, or by using the **ENTER** knob.
   See below for details.

   Entering band and band channel with the numeric keys: Use the numeric keys to enter band and band channel and then push the **ENTER** knob.

   Choosing band and band channel with the ENTER knob:
   After showing the window, use the **FILE/CURSOR** key to place the cursor in the band or band channel position, whichever you want to change.

```
   2 00                    2 00
```

Cursor position for   Cursor position for
selection of band channel   selection of band

3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to set band (or channel) desired.

```
 ⇒ 2 ⇔ 4 ⇔ 6 ⇔ 8 ⇔ 12 ⇔ 16 ⇔ 18 ⇔ 22 ⇔ 25 ⇔ 01 ⇔ 02 ----- ⇔ 029  ⇐
          └────────────────────────┘   └──────────────────────┘
                    ITU band                    User band
```
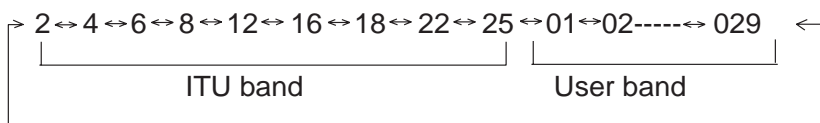
Setting Range
ITU Band: 2/4/6/8/12/16/18/22/25
User Band: 001-029 (First zero is necessary)
ITU Channel: XX01 - XX236 (rendering on band or mode)
User Channel: XXX01 - XXX99

4. Push the **ENTER** knob. The Tx and Rx frequencies of the channel entered appear.

Choosing frequency

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose Tx or Rx as appropriate and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
CH:            200
Tx:    2182.0  kHz
Rx  2182.00    kHz  ◁|||
SSB  SIMP  HIGH  FAST  NB  SQ
SEN ▮▮▭▭        S ▮▮▭▭▭
IA  ▮▮▮▮▭  10.0A
MMSI xxxxxxxxx          UTC 00:00
 35°00.0000N            EPFS 23:59
135°00.0000E
```
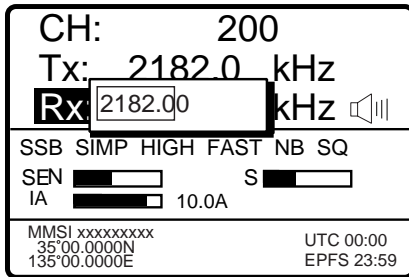
2. Enter frequency by one of the methods below.

   Entering frequency with the numeric keys:

   Use the numeric keys to enter frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob. For example, to enter 2161 kHz, key in **2**, **1**, **6**, **1**, **0**. (Keying in 2-1-6-1 will set 216.1 kHz.) Be sure to include zero for 100 Hz place.

   Choosing frequency with the ENTER knob (for RX only):

3. Use the **FILE/CURSOR** key to choose digit to change.
4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to set digit.
5. Push the **ENTER** knob.

Note: When Tx and Rx frequencies are different, enter Tx and Rx in that order:
     Tx: Tx/Rx frequencies
     Rx: Rx frequency only

2.3 Transmitting

After selecting class of emission and frequency, you can transmit by pressing the PTT switch. Tx is shown on the display.

2.3.1 Transmitting procedure

Maximum transmission power is achieved only when the antenna impedance and transmitter impedance match each other. Because the antenna impedance changes with frequency, antenna impedance matching with the transmitter impedance is done with the antenna coupler. The antenna coupler automatically tunes the transmitter to a wide range of different antenna lengths, from 7 to 18 (FS-1570/2570) or 10 to 18 (FS-5070) meters.

To initiate the automatic tuning, do the following:

1. Press the **PTT** switch on the handset or the **LOG/TUNE** key more than one second on the control unit. Tuning is automatically adjusted at first transmission after frequency is changed. "TUNING" appears when the **LOG/TUNE** key is pressed more than one second; "Tx" pops out when the PTT switch is pressed.
   Tuning will be completed within 2 to 5 seconds for a newly selected frequency, or less than 0.5 seconds for a once-tuned frequency. When the tuning process is successfully

completed, TUNE: OK appears. If tuning fails, TUNE: NG appears.

2. Hold the handset close to your mouth, press the **PTT** switch and speak clearly.

Note: When tuning is initiated in the two control units system, the display of the idle control unit shows "OCCUPIED(ANOTHER CONTROLLER)." In this case, only the DISTRESS button is operative on the idle control unit. Further, if a control unit is in use when the other control is tuned, the display of the activated control unit shows "OCCUPIED" plus the reason why cannot use: ANOTHER CONTROLLER or NBDP to inform you that tuning is not operated.

2.3.2 Reducing transmitter power

To minimize possible interference to other stations, reduce the transmission power. This should be done when using the transceiver in a harbor, near the shore or close to communication partner (other ship).

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose HIGH, MID, LOW (1) or LOW2 (shown on FS-5070) in the equipment states area and then push the **ENTER** knob.
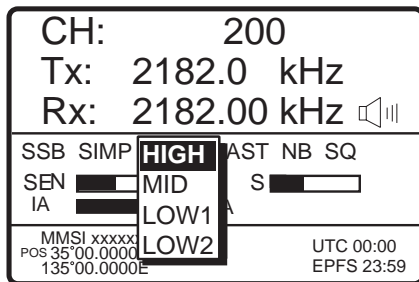
(The above figure shows FS-5070.)

	FS-1570	FS-2570	FS-5070
HIGH	150Wpep	250Wpep	500Wpep
MID	100Wpep	125Wpep	350Wpep
LOW1*	68Wpep	90Wpep	200Wpep
LOW2			110Wpep

*: For FS-1570/2570, "LOW"

(Power: ITU401CH)

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose a power as appropriate and then push the **ENTER** knob.

Note: Power amplifier temperature is monitored, and when its temperature rises above a certain temperature output power is automatically reduced. For FS-5070, when the over current is detected, output power is automatically reduced.

2.3.3 Condition of the transmitting unit

While transmitting, you may display RF (PA output), IA (antenna current), IC (collector current) or VC (collector voltage), at the lower left-hand side of the radiotelephone screen.

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose RF, IA, IC or VC (whichever is displayed) in the equipment states area, and push the **ENTER** knob.
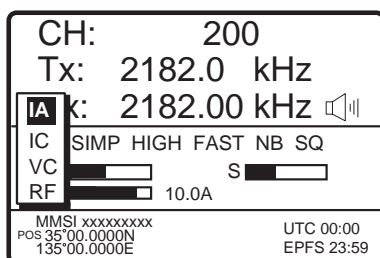
Equipment states area

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose option desired and then push the **ENTER** knob.

Checking the transmitting power

During transmission, the IA bar deflects according to the current being fed to the antenna feeder from the antenna coupler. The unit of readout is amperes. The antenna current varies with the effective antenna impedance. The reading differs by the frequency and antenna length. The output power is proportional to the square of an antenna current.

```
CH:        200
Tx:  2182.0  kHz
Rx:  2182.00 kHz  ◁‖

SSB  SIMP  HIGH  FAST  NB  SQ
SEN ■□         S ■□
IA  ■□    2.1A ◄──────── Antenna Current

MMSI xxxxxxxxx
POS 35°00.0000N              UTC 00:00
    135°00.0000E             EPFS 23:59
```
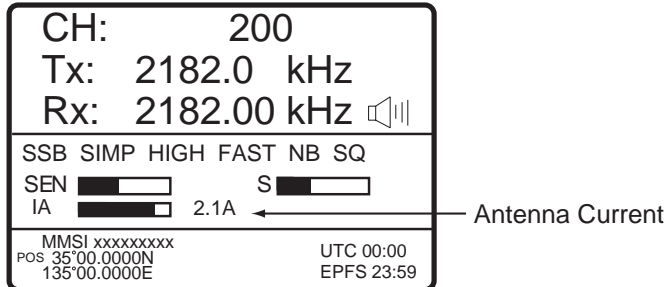
2.4   Receiving

Check if the emission mode and receiving frequency are set properly. If necessary, set them again referring to section 2.1 and 2.2.

2.4.1   RF gain (sensitivity) adjustment

In normal use the sensitivity should be set for maximum. If the audio on the received channel is unclear or interfered with other signals, adjust (usually reduce) sensitivity to improve clarity.

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose SEN in the equipment states area and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
SEN   ■□
```
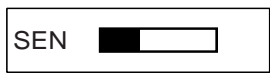
2. Rotate the **ENTER** to adjust and then push the **ENTER** knob.

2.4.2   S-meter

The S-meter shows relative signal strength coming into the receiver front end. Note that the S-meter does not function when the AGC is turned off.

```
                    CH:        200
                    Tx:  2182.0  kHz
                    Rx:  2182.00 kHz  ◁‖

                    SSB  SIMP  HIGH  FAST  NB  SQ
Equipment states area { SEN ■□         S ■□   ◄──── S-meter
                    IA  ■□   10.0A

                    MMSI xxxxxxxxx
                    POS 35°00.0000N       UTC 00:00
                        135°00.0000E      EPFS 23:59
```
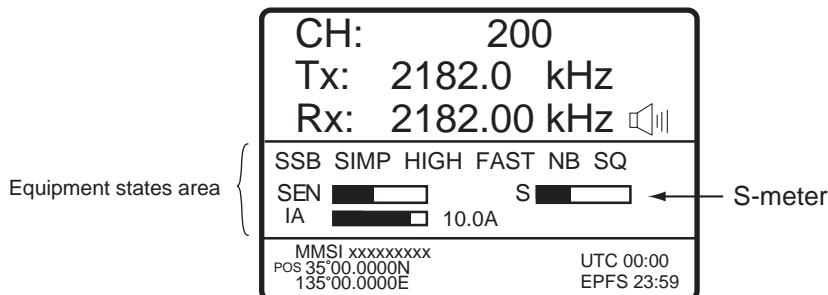
2.4.3   Receiving AM broadcasting stations

1. Press the **RT** key to show the radiotelephone screen.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose emission mode and then push the **ENTER** knob.

Emission mode →

```
CH:          200
Tx:   2182.0  kHz
Rx:   2182.00 kHz  ⊲|||
SSB    HIGH FAST NB  SQ          → AGC mode
TLX              S ■
AM     10.0A
MMSI xxxxxxxxx            UTC 00:00
 35°00.0000N
135°00.0000E             EPFS 23:59
```
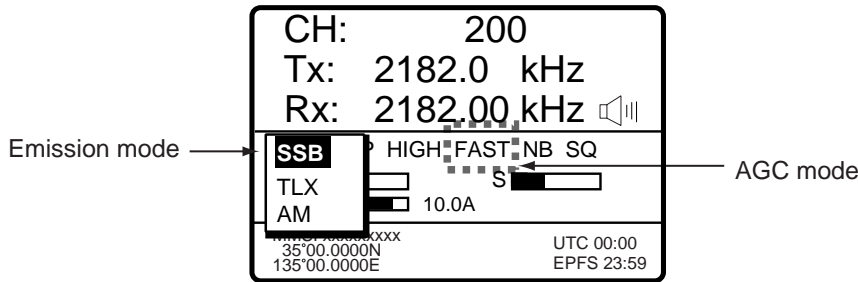
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose AM and then push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose Rx and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
CH:          200
Tx:   2182.0  kHz
Rx  2182.00   kHz  ⊲|||
SSB  SIMP  HIGH  FAST  NB  SQ
SEN ■■□              S ■
 IA ■■□    10.0A
 MMSI xxxxxxxxx          UTC 00:00
POS 35°00.0000N
 135°00.0000E            EPFS 23:59
```
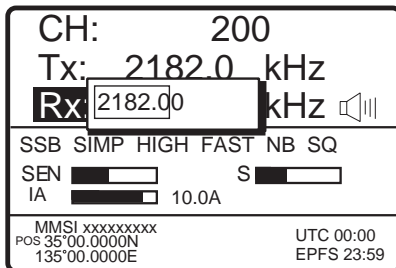
5. Key in RX frequency with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.

2.4.4   Squelch function

Squelch on/off

The squelch mutes the audio output in the absence of an incoming signal. Press the **ACK/SQ** key to turn on and off the squelch alternately. When radio noise is too jarring during stand-by condition, it may be muted by activating the squelch. "SQ" in the equipment states area is hatched when the squelch function is active.

Squelch frequency

To adjust the squelch frequency, see section 6.3.

2.4.5   Noise blanker

The noise blanker functions to remove pulse noise. To turn it on or off, see section 6.2.

2.5   When Automatic Tuning Fails

The antenna coupler automatically tunes a wire or whip antenna transceiver. When all frequencies cannot be tuned, TUNE: OK will not appear on the display. In this case, you can tune 2182 kHz by manually operating the coupler as shown below.

⚠ DANGER

HIGH TENSION HAZARD

DO NOT TRANSMIT WHEN THE ANTENNA COUPLER IS OPEN.

1. Turn off the control unit. Remove the cover of the antenna coupler.
2. Set the MANUAL-AUTO switch to the MANUAL position.

COUPLER BOARD

MANUAL   AUTO
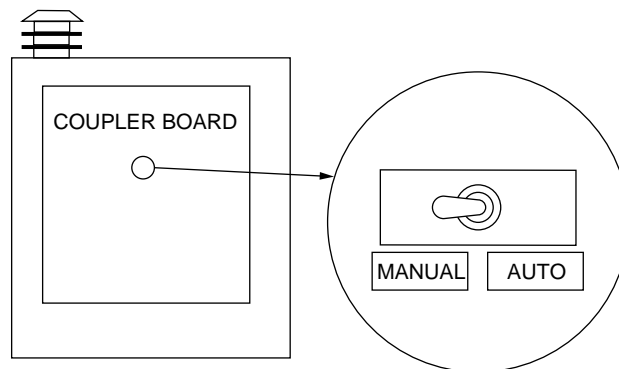
3. Replace the cover.
4. Turn on the control unit.
5. Communicate using 2182 kHz.

2.6   User Channels

The USER CH menu provides for registration of user TX and RX channels, where permitted by the Authorities. The user channel in the System setup menu must be enabled in order to register user channels. For further details, contact your dealer. See section 6.4 to register.

NOTICE
FURUNO will assume no responsibility for the disturbance caused by the unlawful or improper setting of user channels.

3. DSC OVERVIEW

3.1 What is DSC?

DSC is an acronym meaning Digital Selective Calling. It is a digital distress and general calling system in the MF and HF bands used by ships for transmitting distress alerts and general calls and by coast stations for transmitting the associated acknowledgements. For DSC distress and safety calling in the MF and HF bands, the frequencies are 2187.5, 4207.5, 6312.0, 8414.5, 12577.0, and 16804.5 kHz.

The DSC station sends and receives DSC general and distress calls via the radiotelephone.
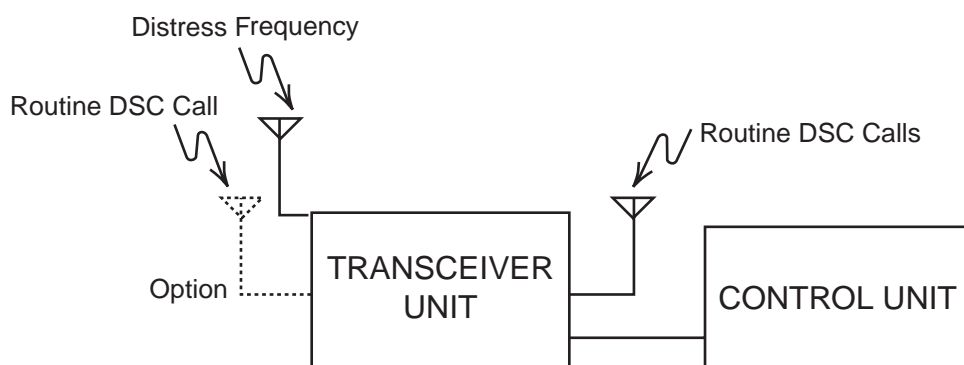
3.2 DSC Message

DSC calls are roughly divided in two groups: distress, urgency and safety messages, and routine messages. Below are the types of DSC messages.

Call	Description
Distress Alerts	Your ship sends distress message
Distress relay area	Your ship relays distress call to all ships in a specific geographical area
Distress relay coast	Your ship relays distress call to a coast station
Medical Transport	Inform areas that your ship is carrying medical supplies*
Neutral Craft	Inform areas that your ship is not a participant in armed conflict*
Individual	Call to a specific address
PSTN message	Call over Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)
Test message	Send test signal to a station to test your station's functionality
Group message	Call to a specific group
Area message	Call to all ships in a specific geographical area
Position	Your ship requests position of other ships
Polling message	Confirm if own ship is within communicating range with other ships. (Receive and answer only)

*Special Message: When sending these messages, set the acknowledgement. See section 6.15.

Contents of a DSC call

Calling category

Call category	Call
DISTRESS	Distress Alerts, Distress relay area, Distress relay coast
GENERAL	Individual, PSTN message, Test message, Group message, Area message, Position, Medical Transport, Nautical Craft, Polling message

Station ID

Own ship ID and sending station ID. Coast station ID begins with 00; Group ID begins with 0.

Priority

Distress: Grave and imminent danger and request immediate assistance.

Urgency: A calling station has a very urgent call to transmit concerning safety of ship, aircraft or other vehicle or safety of person.

Safety: A station is about to transmit a call containing an important navigational or meteorological warning.

Routine: General calling

Communication type

Telephone: Telephone (J3E) by SSB radiotelephone
NBDP-ARQ: Telex (J2B) mode ARQ via NBDP Terminal Unit
NBDP-FEC: Telex (J2B) mode FEC via NBDP Terminal Unit
DATA: Data communication by SSB (Routine individual only)

Communication frequency

Working frequency used to call by telephone, NBDP or DATA. The sending station may have the receiving frequency (ship or coast station) assign the frequency to use.

Position

Position can be automatically or manually sent.

DSC frequency

DSC frequency to use. If the call priority is SAFETY, URGENCY and DISTRESS, choose a DSC distress frequency.

End code

The end of a DSC call is denoted by RQ (Acknowledgement required), BQ (Acknowledgement) or EOS (no acknowledgement required).

3.3   Audio Alarms

When you receive a distress alert or routine call addressed to your ship, the audio and visual alarms are released. For the distress or urgency call, the audio alarm sounds until the **CANCEL** key is pressed, and sounds for one minute and then automatically goes off in case of other calls. The tone of the alarm changes with the call received. By becoming accustomed to the tone, you can know which type of call you or other party have received.

Alarm	Frequency (interval)
Safety call received	150 Hz (1000 ms) and 100 Hz (500 ms)
Routine call received	150 Hz (1000 ms) and 100 Hz (500 ms)
While DISTRESS button is pressed for four s	2000 Hz and 0 Hz (500 ms)
Distress alert sent	2200 Hz, continuous (2 seconds)
Own ship position not updated	2000 Hz (250 ms) and 0 Hz (500 ms)
Distress alert call received	2200 Hz and 1300 Hz (250 ms)
Distress relay call received	2200 Hz and 1300 Hz (250 ms)
Distress relay ack call received	2200 Hz and 1300 Hz (250 ms)
Distress ack call received	2200 Hz (500 ms) and 1300 Hz (500 ms)
Urgency call received	2200 Hz and 0 Hz (250 ms)
Urgency ack call received	2200 Hz and 0 Hz (500 ms)

3.4 Interpreting Call Displays

This paragraph provides the information necessary for interpreting receive and send call displays.

3.4.1 Receive calls

Below are sample distress and individual receive calls. The content of other types of receive calls is similar to that of the individual call.

Distress receive call

```
┌── Received message ──┐          ─── Date and time of message
│ MAR-11-2006-23:59     │ ◄────
│ DISTRESS ALERT        │ ◄──── Call type
│ SHIP ID  IN DIST: 123456789 │ ◄── ID No. of ship in distress
│ NATURE: UNDESIGNATED  │ ◄──── Nature of Distress (Undesignated, Fire, Flooding,
│ POS:  12°34.5678N  DIST: 5546nm │      Collision, Grounding, Listing, Sinking, Disabled,
│       123°45.6789E AT 12:34 │       Abandoning, Piracy, Man Overboard)
│ TELEPHONE  2182.0 kHz 10M10S │ ◄── Position of ship in distress
│ ANSWER          GO TO VIEW │     Working frequency to use and communication type
└──────────────────────┘
```

Push **ENTER** knob to switch.

```
┌── View message ──┐
│ DISTRESS COORDINATES:  │
│    12°34.5678N          │
│ 123°45.5678E      AT 12:34 │ ◄── Distress coordinates (position of ship in distress)
│ COMMUNICATION MODE: TELEPHONE │ ◄── Telecommand (class of emission)
│ ACKNOWLEDGEMENT REQUIRED │ ◄── Acknowledge type
│ ERROR-CHECK: OK       │ ◄──── Error check (OK or NG)
│ DSC FREQ      : 2187.5KHZ │ ◄── DSC frequency used to transmit distress call
│ PREV▲  BACK TO RECEIVED VIEW │
└──────────────────┘
```

Rotate **ENTER** knob to switch.

```
┌── View message ──┐
│ DISTRESS ALERT    │ ◄──── Format (distress)
│ SENDER-ID    : 123456789 │ ◄── ID No. of ship in distress
│                   │
│ NATURE OF DISTRESS:  │ ◄──── Nature of distress
│    UNDESIGNATED DISTRESS │     (problem with ship in distress, see above)
│                   │
│             NEXT▼ │
└──────────────────┘
```

Individual receive call

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓   Received message   ▓▓▓  │
│ MAR-11-2006-23:59            │
│ INDIVIDUAL REQUEST           │
│ SENDER ID:    123456789      │
│ PRIORITY: ROUTINE  TX: 2222.2 kHz │
│                    RX: 2222.2 kHz │
│ TELEPHONE                    │
│                    10M10S    │
│ ANSWER          GO TO VIEW   │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

Date and time of message
Message type (or the reason when the message is not received)
ID No. of sending station
Priority (Routine, Safety, Urgency)
Working frequency to use
Communication type

Note: ANSWER is for replying to message.

Push **ENTER** knob to switch.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓    View message    ▓▓▓   │
│                              │
│ COMM FREQUENCY    TX: 2222.2 kHz │
│                   RX: 2222.2 kHz │
│ ACKNOWLEDGEMENT REQUIRED      │
│ ERROR-CHECK: OK              │
│ DSC FREQUENCY   TX: 2177.0KHZ │
│                 RX: 2177.0KHZ │
│ PREV▲ BACK TO RECEIVED VIEW  │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

Working frequency to use

Error check (OK or NG)

DSC frequency used

Rotate **ENTER** knob to switch.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓    View message    ▓▓▓   │
│ INDIVIDUAL REQUEST           │
│ DESTINATION ID  : 111111111  │
│ PRIORITY        : ROUTINE    │
│ SENDER-ID       : 123456789  │
│ COMMUNICATION MODE: TELEPHONE │
│ COMM OPTION     : NO INFORMATION │
│                              │
│                    NEXT ▼    │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

Format (individual)
ID No. of your station
Priority (Routine, Safety, Urgency)
ID No. of sending station
Communication type
Communication option

3.4.2   Send calls

Below are sample distress and individual send calls. The content of other types of send calls is similar to that of the individual call.

Distress send call

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│  Distress button             │
│  pressed!                    │
│ NATURE: UNDESIGNATED         │
│ POS:  12°34.0000N            │
│     123°45.0000E AT 12:34    │
│ TELEPHONE        2182.0 kHz  │
│ DSC FREQ   :     2187.5 kHz  │
│ KEEP PRESSED FOR      2S     │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

Nature of Distress (Undesignated, Fire, Flooding, Collision, Grounding, Listing, Sinking, Disabled, Abandoning, Piracy, Man Overboard)
Position of ship in distress (your ship)
Working frequency to use and communication type
DSC frequency to send distress call
Seconds to continue pressing the **DISTRESS** button to transmit the distress alert.

Individual send call

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▭▭    Compose msg.    ▭▭        │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE:    INDIVIDUAL          │ ◄───── Message type (Individual)
│ STATION ID:  123456789           │ ◄───── ID No. of station where message is to be sent
│ PRIORITY   : ROUTINE             │ ◄───── Priority (Routine, Safety, Urgency)
│ COMM. MODE : TELEPHONE           │ ◄───── Mode of communication (Telephone, NBDP-ARQ, NBDP-FEC, Data)
│ COMM. FREQ : 2078.0kHz           │ ◄───── Working frequency
│ DSC FREQ   : 2M-INTL             │ ◄───── DSC frequency
│            GO TO VIEW            │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

Push **ENTER** knob to switch.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▭▭    View message    ▭▭        │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│                                  │
│ COMM FREQUENCY   TX: 2222.2 kHz  │ ◄───── Working frequency
│                  RX: 2222.2kHz   │
│ ACKNOWLEDGEMENT REQUIRED         │ ◄───── Acknowledge type
│ DSC FREQUENCY  TX: 2177.0 KHZ    │ ◄───── DSC frequency used
│                RX: 2177.0 KHZ    │
│ PREV ▲   BACK TO COMPOSE VIEW    │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

Rotate **ENTER** knob to switch.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▭▭    View message    ▭▭        │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ INDIVIDUAL REQUEST               │ ◄───── Message type
│ DESTINATION ID  : 123456789      │ ◄───── ID No. of station where message is to be sent
│ PRIORITY        : ROUTINE        │ ◄───── Priority
│ SELF-IDENTITY   : 111111111      │ ◄───── ID No. of your station
│ COMMUNICATION MODE: TELEPHONE    │ ◄───── Communication mode
│ COMM OPTION     : NO INFORMATION │ ◄───── Communication option
│              NEXT  ▼             │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

4. DISTRESS OPERATIONS

Distress operation overview

1. Press the **DISTRESS** button.
2. Wait for the distress alert acknowledgement.
3. Communicate with the coast station.

(1) Ship in distress sends Distress Alert.

(2) Coast station sends distress acknowledgement (DIST ACK).

(3) Voice or telex communications between ship in distress and coast station

For details, see below.

4.1 Sending Distress Alert

GMDSS ships carry a DSC terminal with which to transmit the distress alert in the event of a life-endangering situation. A coast station receives the distress alert and sends the distress alert acknowledge call to the ship in distress. Then, voice or telex communications between the ship in distress and coast station begins. Transmission of the distress alert and receiving of the distress alert acknowledgement are completely automatic – simply press the **DISTRESS** button to initiate the sequence. Note that the distress can also be transmitted from the Distress Alert Unit IC-302.

There are four types of sending distress alert; MULTI, AUTO, SELECT and 2-16MHz. MULTI is used normally. When changing to other method, see step 15 on paragraph 4.1.2.

4.1.1 Sending distress alert by DISTRESS button, nature of distress not specified

1. Open the DISTRESS button cover and press and hold down the **DISTRESS** button more than four seconds. The button flashes in red and the buzzer sounds rapidly. The display shows the contents of the distress alert call: your ship's nature of distress, position, time and the DSC frequency over which the alert has been transmitted.

   The number of seconds to continue pressing the **DISTRESS** button appear at the bottom of the display. The buzzer sounds continuously and the lamp in the button lights when the button has been pressed four seconds. You can release the button at that time.

Nature of Distress →
Position, Time →

```
          Distress button
          pressed!
 NATURE: UNDESIGNATED
 POS:  12°34.0000 N
       123°45.0000E  AT 12:34
 TELEPHONE            2182.0 kHz
 DSC FREQ  :          2187.5kHz
       KEEP PRESSED FOR 2S
```

DSC Frequency →
used to transmit the
distress alert

Displays number of seconds to continue
pressing the **DISTRESS** button to
transmit the distress alert.
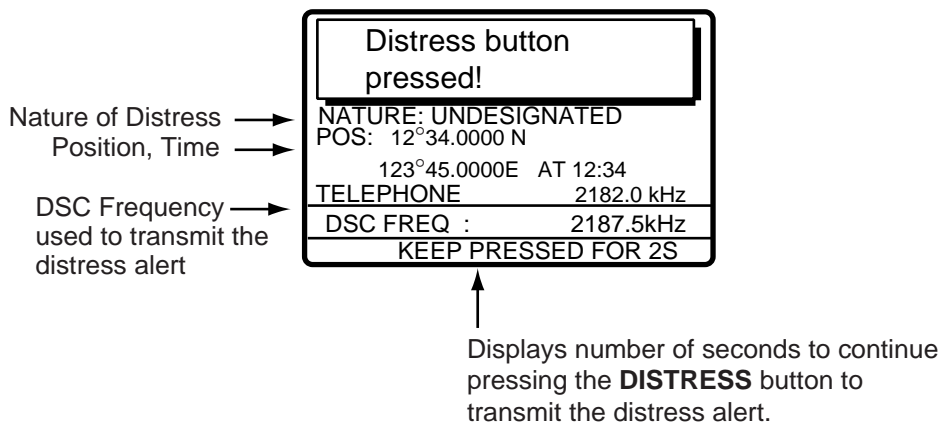
The display changes as below. It takes about 40 to 60 seconds to transmit the distress alert, and the number of seconds until transmission is completed is shown at the bottom of the display. At this time the output power of the radiotelephone is automatically set to maximum.

```
          Distress alert
          message in progress!
 NATURE: UNDESIGNATED
 POS:  12°34.0000N
       123°45.0000E  AT 12:34
 TELEPHONE            2182.0 kHz
 DSC FREQ    :        2187.5 kHz
 TIME TO GO :            38S
```

Time to go until distress
alert is completely transmitted.
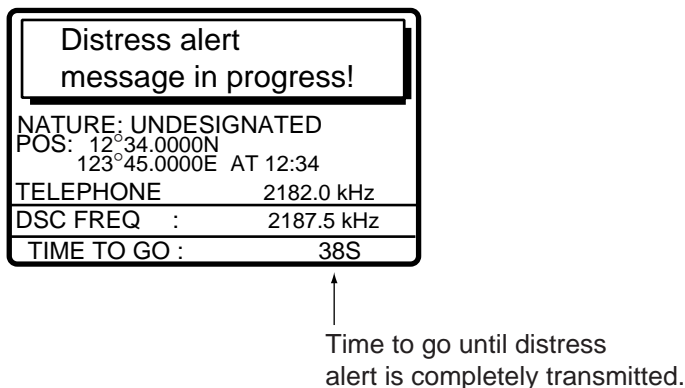
After the distress alert has been sent, the display changes as below and the audio alarm is stopped. Wait to receive the distress acknowledge call from a coast station, which usually takes 1 to 2 min 45 seconds. (The **DISTRESS** button remains lit until the equipment receives the distress acknowledge call from a coast station.) When waiting the distress acknowledge, the timer counts down the number of minutes before next retransmission, from 3.5 to 4.5 minutes, randomly set.

At this time, the equipment cannot receive any calls except the distress alert acknowledge call. The distress alert you sent is recorded in the TX log.
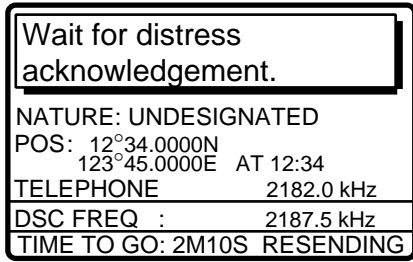
```
Wait for distress
acknowledgement.

NATURE: UNDESIGNATED
POS:  12°34.0000N
      123°45.0000E  AT 12:34
TELEPHONE            2182.0 kHz
DSC FREQ  :          2187.5 kHz
TIME TO GO: 2M10S  RESENDING
```

When the distress acknowledge call is received, the audio alarm sounds and the display changes as below.

```
Distress acknowledge
message received.

 CANCEL: STOP ALARM

NATURE: UNDESIGNATED
POS:  12°34.0000N   DIST: 0 nm
      123°45.0000E   AT 12:34
TELEPHONE           2182.0 kHz
```
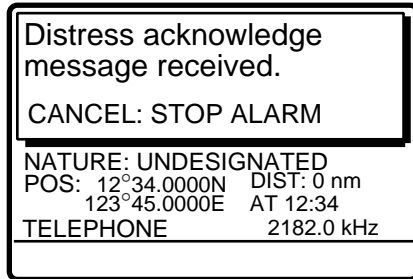
> **Note:** If you do not receive the distress alert acknowledge call, the equipment automatically re-transmits the distress alert and then awaits the distress alert acknowledge call. This is repeated until the distress alert is acknowledged.

2. Silence the alarm with the **CANCEL** key when the distress acknowledge call is received. The contents of the distress acknowledge call appear.
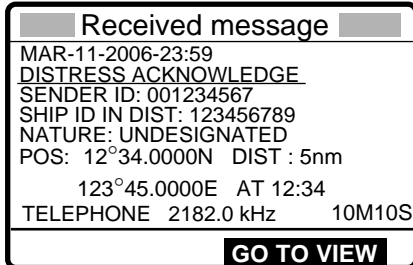
```
█    Received message    █
MAR-11-2006-23:59
DISTRESS ACKNOWLEDGE
SENDER ID: 001234567
SHIP ID IN DIST: 123456789
NATURE: UNDESIGNATED
POS: 12°34.0000N  DIST : 5nm

     123°45.0000E  AT 12:34
TELEPHONE  2182.0 kHz    10M10S    ◄── Elapsed time after receiving
            GO TO VIEW                  (Max. "60M00S"
                                        For over 60 minutes, nothing appears. )
```

3. Communicate with the coast station via radiotelephone, following the instructions below. The radiotelephone automatically sets working frequency and class of emission, as specified in the distress acknowledge call.

   a) Say MAYDAY three times.
   b) Say "This is … " name of your vessel and call sign <u>three</u> times.
   c) Give nature of distress and assistance needed.
   d) Give description of your vessel (type, color, number of persons onboard, etc.).

4.1.2 Sending distress alert by DISTRESS button, nature of distress specified

If you have the time to designate the nature of distress, send the distress alert as follows:

1. Open the DISTRESS button cover and press the **DISTRESS** button momentarily to show the following display.
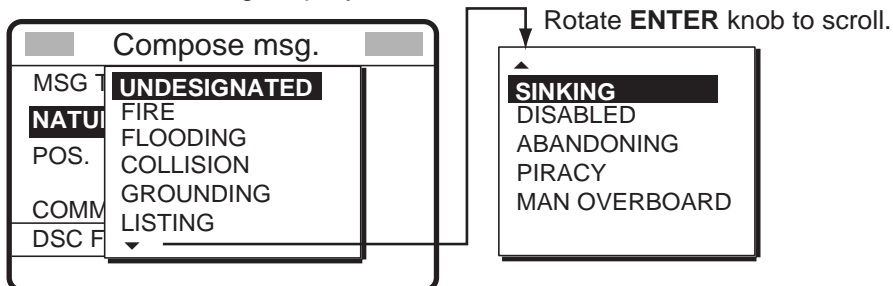
```
┌─────────────────────────────┐        Rotate ENTER knob to scroll.
│ ▇  Compose msg.  ▇          │       ┌─────────────────────────┐
│ MSG ┌──────────────┐        │       │ ▲                       │
│     │ UNDESIGNATED │        │       │ SINKING                 │
│ NATU│ FIRE         │        │       │ DISABLED                │
│     │ FLOODING     │        │       │ ABANDONING              │
│ POS.│ COLLISION    │        │       │ PIRACY                  │
│     │ GROUNDING    │        │       │ MAN OVERBOARD           │
│ COMM│ LISTING      │        │       └─────────────────────────┘
│ DSC │ ▼            │        │
└─────┴──────────────┴────────┘
```

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose nature of distress and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the POS. menu. This is where you enter your position, automatically or manually. The INPUT TYPE option, that is, the source of position data, is selected to EPFS, MANUAL or NO INFO. For EPFS, if the position is correct, push the **ENTER** knob twice and go to step 12. For manual input, or you do not know your position, go to step 4.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│ INPUT  TYPE: EPFS         │
│  LAT  :  34° 41.1234 N    │
│  LON : 135° 30.1234 E     │
│  TIME:   09: 00 UTC       │
└──────────────────────────┘
```
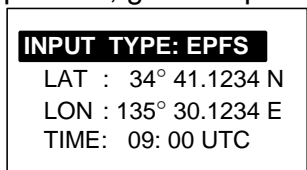
> **Note:** If the message "No Position Data" appears when you change INPUT TYPE from MANUAL to EPFS, confirm that the navigation device is functioning and then choose EPFS again.

4. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the INPUT TYPE menu.

```
┌─────────────────────────┐
│ INPUT  TYPE: /┌────────┐ │
│  LAT  :  34° 41│ EPFS   │ │
│  LON : 135° 30 │ MANUAL │ │
│  TIME:   09: 00│ NO INFO│ │
└────────────────┴────────┘─┘
```
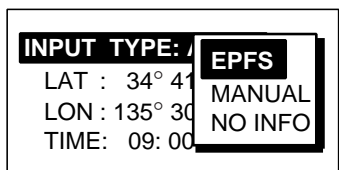
5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MANUAL and then push the **ENTER** knob to go to step 6. If you cannot confirm your position, choose NO INFO, push the **ENTER** knob twice and then go to step 10.
6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the latitude input window.
7. Use the numeric keys to enter latitude (in eight digits). (If necessary, switch coordinates: **1** key to switch to North; **2** key to switch to South.) Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│ INPUT  TYPE: MANUAL       │                    ┌─────────────────────┐
│  LAT : 34° ┌────────────┐ │                    │ 35°00.0000  N        │
│            │34 ° 00.0000 N│ │   ──────▶          │                     │
│  LON : 135°│              │ │   After last digit │ NORTH: [1] KEY      │
│  TIME:  09:│              │ │   is entered       │ SOUTH: [2] KEY      │
└────────────┴──────────────┘─┘                    └─────────────────────┘
```
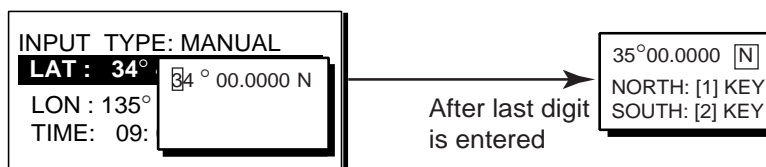
8. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the longitude input window.

9. Use the numeric keys to enter longitude (in nine digits). (If necessary, switch coordinates: **1** key to switch to East; **2** key to switch to West.) Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
INPUT  TYPE: MANUAL
  LAT :  35° 00 NORTH
 LON : 135          
 TIME:  09          
```
135°30.0000 E

After last digit
is entered

```
135°00.0000 E
EAST: [1] KEY
WEST: [2] KEY
```

10. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the time input window.

```
INPUT  TYPE: MANUAL
  LAT :  35°00 NORTH
  LON : 135° 00 EAST
  TIME: 09          
```
12 : 34
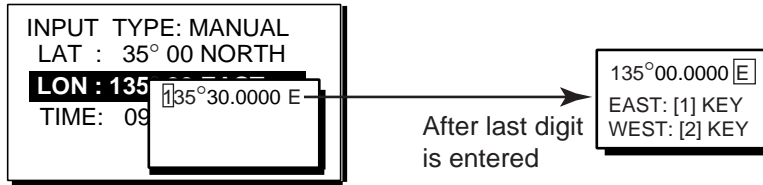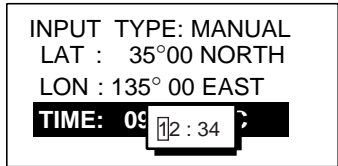
11. Key in UTC time with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.

   Note: If you cannot confirm time, enter 88:88 to input NO INFO as the time.

12. The COMPOSE MESSAGE screen is redisplayed. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COMM MODE menu.

```
      Compose msg.

MSG TYPE:   DISTRESS
NATURE: FLOODING
POS: 35°00.0  TELEPHONE
COMM MODE   NBDP-FEC

DSC FREQ :  2187.5 kHz
      GO TO VIEW
```
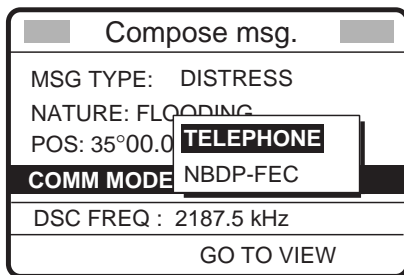
13. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose TELEPHONE or NBDP-FEC as appropriate and then push the **ENTER** knob. (Telephone is the usual mode, however NBDP may also be used.)

14. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

```
   Compos   AUTO            *  2MHZ
            MULTI           * 4MHZ
MSG TYPE:   SELECT          * 6MHZ
NATURE: FLO  2187.5         * 8MHZ
POS: 35°00.0 4207.5         *12MHZ
             6312.0         *16MHZ
COMM MODE:   8414.5         EXIT
DSC FREQ :   12577.0   HZ
             16804.5
      GO TO ALL VIEW
```
Each pressing of ENTER key
shows/hides asterisk (marked
for chosen frequencies).
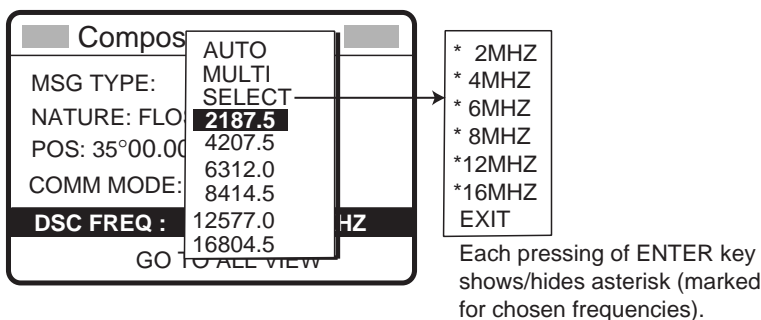
15. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose a DSC frequency mode, and push the **ENTER** knob.
   MULTI: Transmits the distress alert on 2MHz, 4 MHz, 6 MHz, 8MHz, 12 MHz and 16 MHz in that order in a transmission, then waits for acknowledgement.
   AUTO: Transmits the distress alert on 2 MHz at first time (40 to 60 seconds). If the distress alert is not acknowledged, the following sequence occurs:
   2nd: 8 MHz, 3rd: 16 MHz, 4th: 4 MHz, 5th: 12 MHz and 6th: 6 MHz
   SELECT: You can transmit on the distress frequencies of your choice. The minimum number is three and 2 MHz and 8 MHz are mandatory; they cannot be deselected.
   2187.5 to 16804.5: Transmits the distress alert on the frequency chosen five times.

The display changes as below (example).

```
┌────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓   Compose msg.    ▓▓         │
├────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE    : DISTRESS          │
│ NATURE      : FLOODING          │
│ POS: 35°00.0000N                │
│      135°00.0000E    AT 12:34   │
│ COMM MODE     :   TELEPHONE     │
├────────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ    :    2187.5 kHz     │
├────────────────────────────────┤
│                   ▐GO TO VIEW▌  │
└────────────────────────────────┘
```

16. Press the **DISTRESS** button more than four seconds to send the distress alert.

```
┌────────────────────────────────┐
│   Distress alert                │
│   message in progress!          │
├────────────────────────────────┤
│ NATURE: FLOODING                │
│ POS: 35°00.0000N                │
│      135°00.0000E    AT 12:34   │
│ TELEPHONE           2182.0 kHz  │
├────────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ    :       2187.5 kHz  │
├────────────────────────────────┤
│  TIME TO GO : 38S               │
└────────────────────────────────┘
```

17. When the distress acknowledge call is received, use the telephone or telex to communicate.
    For telephone, follow step 3 on page 4-3. For NBDP, follow the procedure below.

Communicating by NBDP Terminal Unit

The message "STATION ENTRY COMPLETED FROM DSC. Press any key to escape." Appears on the NBDP's display.

1. Press any key on the NBDP Terminal Unit to erase the message.
2. Press the function key **F3** on the keyboard of the NBDP Terminal Unit to show the Operate menu.
3. Choose "Call Station" and then press the **Enter** key.

```
┌─────────────────────Call Station───────────────────────┐
│ ┌──── Station List ────┐   ┌──── Station Set up ──────┐ │
│ │ ▌DSC▐                │   │ Station  : DSC           │ │
│ │  ABC-6M              │   │ ID Code  :               │ │
│ │  ABC-12M             │   │ Mode     : ARQ FEC        │ │
│ │  ABC-8M              │   │ Tx Freq  : 2174.50        │ │
│ │  FURUNO              │   │ Rx Freq  : 2174.50        │ │
│ └──────────────────────┘   └──────────────────────────┘ │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

4. "DSC" is selected; press the **Enter** key to connect the communications line. "Connect" appears in reverse video.
5. Type and transmit your message, giving the following information:
   - Ship's name and call sign
   - Nature of distress and assistance needed
   - Description of your vessel
6. Press the function key **F10** (BREAK) to disconnect the line.

For NBDP details, see Chapters 7 through 10.

4.2 Receiving a Distress Alert

When you receive a distress alert from a ship in distress, the audio alarm sounds and the message "Distress alert message received." Appears on the display. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the audio alarm. Wait for the distress acknowledge call from a coast station. If you do not receive the distress acknowledge call from a coast station, which usually takes about five minutes from the time of reception of a distress alert, follow the appropriate flow chart in this section to determine your course of action.

Note 1: An asterisk (*) appearing in a distress alert message indicates error at asterisk location.

Note 2: If the DISTRESS/URGENT RECEIVING UNIT IC-303 is connected, the aural alarm sounds and the IC-303's alarm lamp lights in red when a distress alert is received. To silence the aural alarm, press the **ALARM RESET** key.

4.2.1 Distress alert received on MF band

Do the following:

- Continue watching on 2182 kHz. Wait for coast station to acknowledge the distress call. Watch until "SEELONCE FINI" is announced.

- If multiple DSC distress alerts are received from the same ship in distress and it is beyond a doubt in your vicinity, a DSC acknowledgement may, after consultation with an RCC or Coast Station, be sent to terminate the call by DSC.

Action for ship receiving distress alert on MF band

```
        ┌─────────────────────────────┐
        (  DSC Distress alert received.  )
        └─────────────────────────────┘
                      │
                      ▼
        ┌─────────────────────────────┐
        │ Press CANCEL key to         │
        │ silence alarm.              │
        └─────────────────────────────┘
                      │
                      ▼
        ┌─────────────────────────────┐
        │ Listen on 2182 kHz          │
        │ for 5 minutes.              │
        └─────────────────────────────┘
                      │
                      ▼
```

Did you receive acknowledge from CS and/or RCC? — No → Is distress traffic in progress? — No → Is the DSC distress call continuing? — No →

Is distress traffic in progress? — Yes ↓

Is the DSC distress call continuing? — Yes ↓

Did you receive acknowledge from CS and/or RCC? — Yes ↓

Is own vessel able to aid ship in distress? — Yes → Acknowledge the alert by radiotelphony to the ship in distress on 2182 kHz.

Is own vessel able to aid ship in distress? — No ↓

CS = Coast Station
RCC = Rescue Co-ordination Center

Enter details in log. ← Inform CS and/or RCC.

Sending the distress acknowledge call to ship in distress (on MF band)

Note: You cannot send the distress acknowledge call for five minutes because of receiving the distress acknowledgement from the coast station.

Transmit the distress acknowledge call to the ship in distress only when you do not receive it from a coast station and **you are able to aid the ship in distress**. First, transmit the distress acknowledge to the ship in distress by telephone. To terminate transmission of the distress alert, send acknowledge call as follows.

The audio alarm sounds and the display shows the message "Distress alert message received." When your ship receives a distress alert.
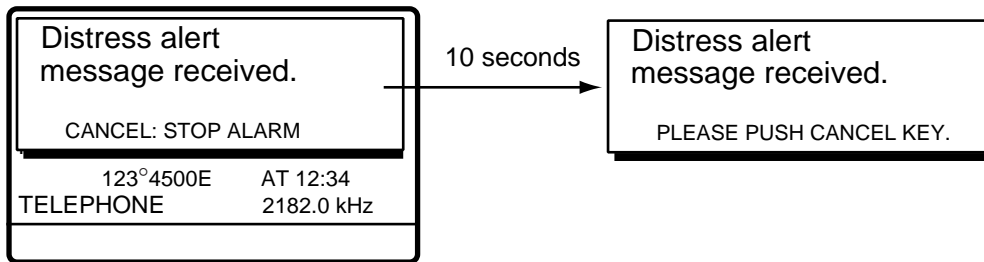
```
┌──────────────────────┐                    ┌──────────────────────┐
│ Distress alert       │                    │ Distress alert       │
│ message received.    │   10 seconds       │ message received.    │
│                      │ ─────────────────► │                      │
│  CANCEL: STOP ALARM  │                    │  PLEASE PUSH CANCEL KEY. │
├──────────────────────┤                    └──────────────────────┘
│   123°4500E   AT 12:34 │
│ TELEPHONE    2182.0 kHz │
│                      │
└──────────────────────┘
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the audio alarm and the display changes as below.

```
┌──────────────────────┐                    ┌──────────────────────────┐
│ State of Waiting     │                    │ ▭ Received message ▭     │
│ For Acknowledge.     │  Press any key.    │ JAN-23-2006-23:59        │
│                      │ ─────────────────► │ DISTRESS ALERT           │
│   PUSH ANY KEY.      │                    │ SHIP ID IN DIST:  123456789 │
└──────────────────────┘                    │ NATURE: UNDESIGNATED     │
                                            │ POS:  12 34.000N  DIST: 43nm │
                                            │      123 45.000E  AT 12:34 │
                                            │ TELEPHONE  2182.0 kHz 10M10S │
                                            │ ANSWER          GO TO VIEW │
                                            └──────────────────────────┘
```
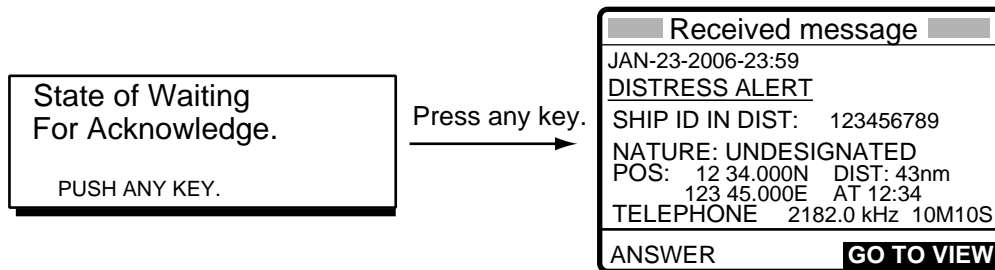
2. **If you do not receive the distress acknowledge call from a coast station and you have received the distress alert more than twice,** contact the ship in distress over radiotelephone.
3. If the distress alert continues, terminate the alert by rotating the **ENTER** knob to choose ANSWER, push the **ENTER** knob and then go to step 4 to send the distress acknowledge call to the ship in distress.
4. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the MSG TYPE menu.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│ ▭   Compose msg.   ▭     │
├──────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE                 │
│   ┌──────────────┐       │
│   │ RELAY COAST  │       │
│   │ RELAY AREA   │       │
│ COAS│ACKNOWLEDGE │       │
│ SHIP └──────────────┘    │
├──────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ  :   2187.5 kHz │
│         GO TO VIEW       │
└──────────────────────────┘
```
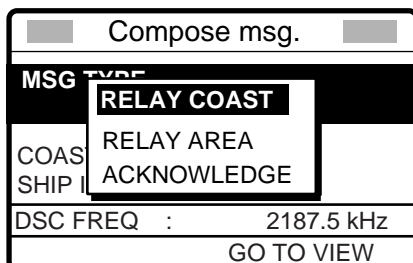
5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ACKNOWLEDGE and then push the **ENTER** knob.
    The following display appears.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐        ┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓    Compose msg.    ▓▓     │        │ Ack should be                │
│                             │        │ By Coast Station             │
│ MSG TYPE    : DISTRESS ACK  │        │                              │
│                             │   →    │   CANCEL: CLOSE WINDOW       │
│ SHIP ID IN DIST : 123456789 │        │                              │
│                             │        │                              │
│ DSC FREQ  :    2187.5 kHz   │        │ DSC FREQ   :    2187.5 kHz   │
│                  GO TO VIEW │        │                  GO TO VIEW  │
└─────────────────────────────┘        └──────────────────────────────┘
```
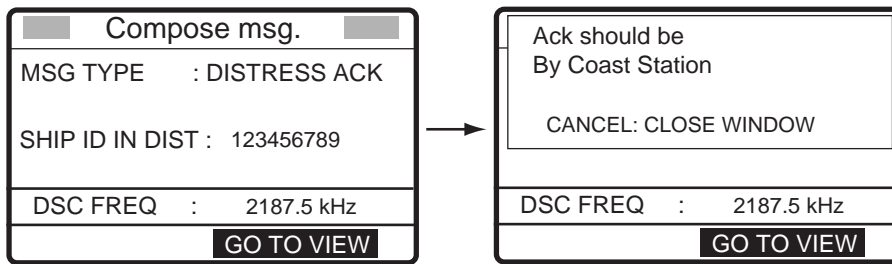
6. Press the **CALL** key for three seconds.
    The message "Priority distress transmit sure?" appears. Continue to press the key until
    the message "Distress acknowledge message in progress." Appears, to transmit the
    distress acknowledge call to the ship in distress.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐                    ┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ Priority distress           │                    │ Distress acknowledge         │
│ transmit sure?              │                    │ message in progress!         │
│                             │   CALL key         │                              │
│ SHIP ID IN DIST: 123456789  │   pressed          │ SHIP ID IN DIST :  123456789 │
│                             │   3 seconds        │                              │
│ DSC FREQ  :    2187.5 KHZ   │                    │ DSC FREQ   :   2187.5 KHZ    │
│ KEEP PRESSED FOR      3S    │                    │          TIME TO GO: 4S      │
└─────────────────────────────┘                    └──────────────────────────────┘
```
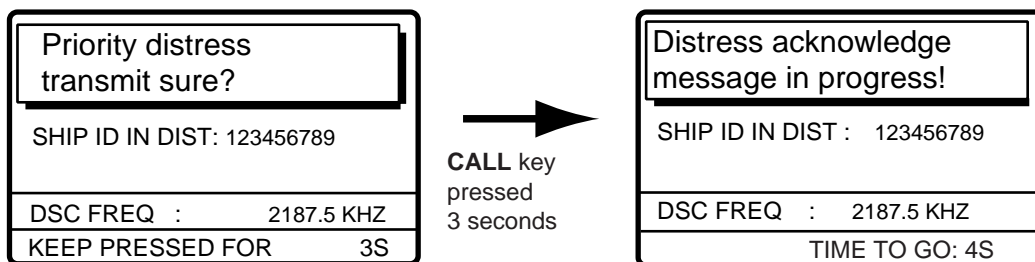
4.2.2   Distress alert received on HF band

If you receive a distress alert on the HF band, the ALARM lamp lights and the audio alarm
sounds. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the audio alarm. Wait for the distress
acknowledge from a coast station. If you do not receive the distress acknowledge within five
minutes, follow the instructions below to determine your course of action.

*   Watch on the distress frequency.

*   Relay the distress alert in the following cases:
    - You have not received a distress acknowledge call from a coast station within five
      minutes after receiving a distress call.
    - You have not received a distress relay from other ship.
    - You cannot receive distress communications from other ship over radiotelephone.
    - If it is clear the ship or persons in distress are not in the vicinity and/or other crafts
      are better placed to assist, superfluous communications which could interfere with
      search and rescue activities should be avoided. Details should be recorded in the
      appropriate log book.
    - The ship relaying the distress alert should establish communications with the station
      controlling the distress as directed and render such assistance as required and
      appropriate.

When receiving a DSC message, the following message may appear.

```
┌─────────────────────────┐                    ┌─────────────────────────┐
│ Change COM Frequency    │  Choose "Pause".   │ Change COM Frequency    │
│  Agree        Disagree  │ ─────────────────▶ │  [Agree]      Disagree  │
│ Count down xx sec. [Pause]                   │ Count down has been paused.
└─────────────────────────┘                    └─────────────────────────┘
```

After 10 seconds passed or when "Agree" is chosen,
the working frequency is changed with the message
shown below.

Choose "Agree".

```
┌─────────────────────────┐
│  Accept New             │
│    Working Freq         │
│                         │
│    CANCEL: CLOSE WINDOW │
└─────────────────────────┘
```
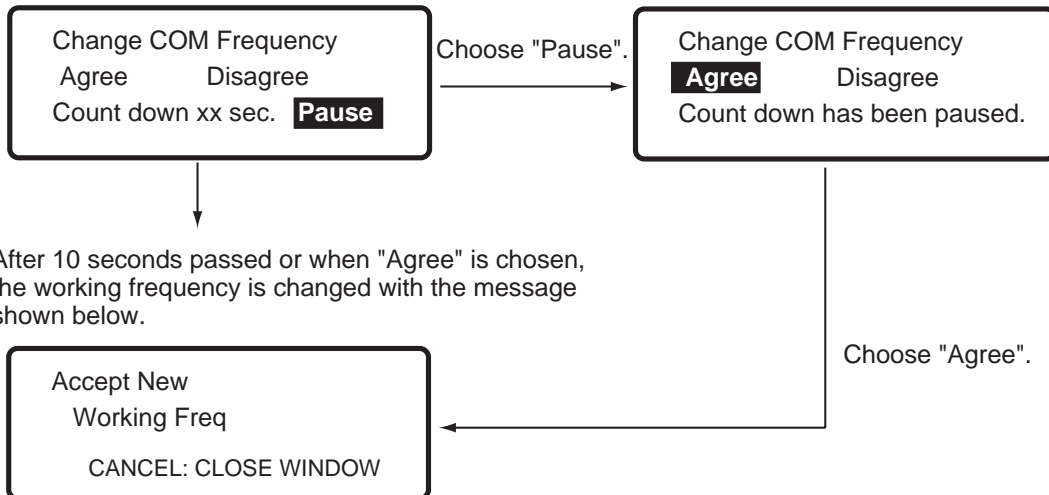
Action for ships receiving distress alert on HF band

HF DSC, RTF AND NBDP CHANNELS (kHz)		
DSC	RTF*	NBDP
4207.5	4125	4177.5
6312.0	6215	6268
8414.5	8291	8376.5
12577.0	12290	12520
16804.5	16420	16695

* = Radiotelephone

CS = Coast Station
RCC = Rescue Co-ordination Center
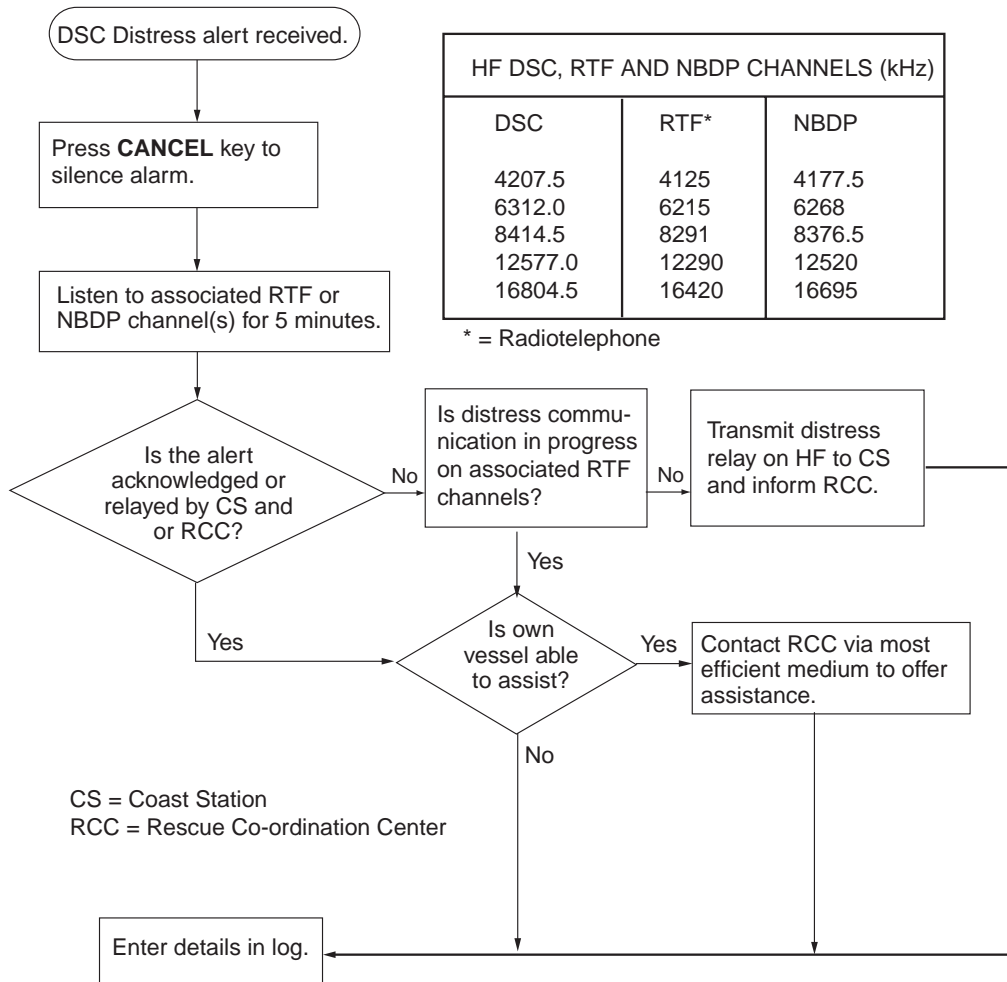
Sending the distress relay to coast station (on HF band)

The audio alarm sounds and the display changes as below when a distress call is received.
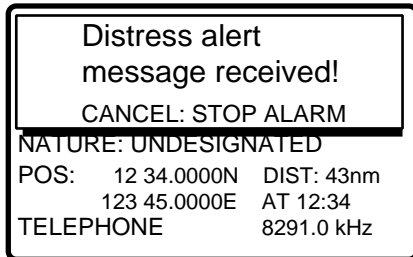
```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│        Distress alert       │
│      message received!      │
│     CANCEL: STOP ALARM      │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ NATURE: UNDESIGNATED        │
│ POS:    12 34.0000N  DIST: 43nm │
│         123 45.0000E  AT 12:34 │
│ TELEPHONE        8291.0 kHz │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the audio alarm, and the display changes as below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓  Received message  ▓▓▓  │
│ JAN-23-2006-23:59           │
│ DISTRESS ALERT              │
│  SHIP ID IN DIST:   123456789 │
│  NATURE: UNDESIGNATED       │
│ POS:   12 34.0000N  DIST: 43nm │
│        123 45.0000E  AT 12:34 │
│ TELEPHONE   8291.0 kHz  10M10S │
│ ANSWER            GO TO VIEW │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ANSWER and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the MSG TYPE menu.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓    Compose msg.    ▓▓▓  │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE      : INDIVIDUAL  │
│     COA │ RELAY COAST │     │
│   SHIP  │ RELAY AREA  │21   │
│         └─────────────┘     │
│ DSC FREQ  :      8414.5 kHz │
│          GO TO VIEW         │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```
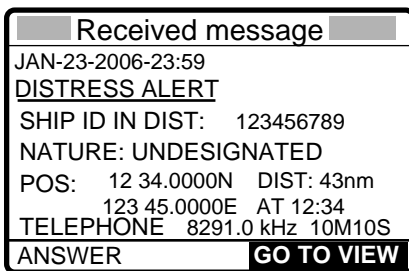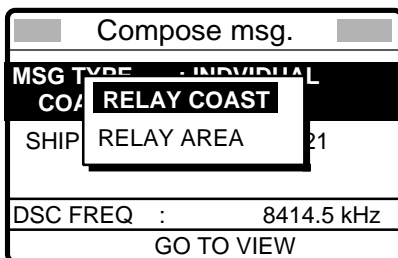
4. If you know the ID of the nearest coast station, choose RELAY COAST and then push the **ENTER** knob.
5. Push **ENTER** knob and key in ID of coast station where to send the distress relay and then push the **ENTER** knob.
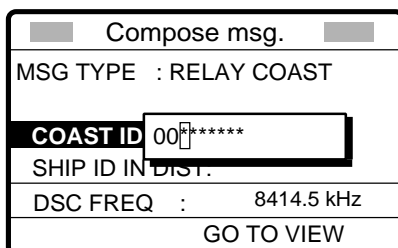
```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓    Compose msg.    ▓▓▓  │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE   : RELAY COAST    │
│                             │
│  COAST ID │00*******│       │
│   SHIP ID IN DIST.          │
│ DSC FREQ   :     8414.5 kHz │
│          GO TO VIEW         │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ. Menu.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▢     Compose msg.      ▢     │
├──────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE:  ┌─────────┐        │
│   COAST SH │ 2187.5  │        │
│ COAST ID:  │ 4207.5  │        │
│ SHIP ID IN DI│ 6312.0 │      │
│            │ 8414.5  │        │
│            │ 12577.0 │        │
│ DSC FREQ   │ 16804.5 │ KHZ    │
├──────────────────────────────┤
│         GO TO VIEW            │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

7. Choose appropriate frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob. You should first choose 8414.5 kHz.
8. Press the **CALL** key, and the display changes as shown below.

```
┌────────────────────────────┐
│ Priority distress          │
│ transmit sure?             │
├────────────────────────────┤
│ COAST ID: 001234567        │
│ SHIP ID IN DIST: 123456789 │
├────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ   :      8414.5 kHz│
│ KEEP PRESSED FOR        3S  │
└────────────────────────────┘
```

CALL key pressed 3 seconds. →

```
┌────────────────────────────┐
│ Distress relay coast       │
│ message in progress!       │
├────────────────────────────┤
│ DESTINATION ID: 001234567  │
│ SHIP ID IN DIST: 123456789 │
├────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ   :      8414.5 kHz│
│ TIME TO GO :           5S   │
└────────────────────────────┘
```

Timer counts down time until the message is transmitted. (See note below.)

```
┌────────────────────────────┐
│ Wait for distress          │
│ relay acknowledge.         │
├────────────────────────────┤
│ DESTINATION ID: 001234567  │
│ SHIP ID IN DIST: 123456789 │
├────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ   :      8414.5 kHz│
│ TIME TO GO : 3M50S  RESENDING│
└────────────────────────────┘
```

Note: If a coast station acknowledges the call before the timer counts down to zero, press the **CANCEL** key to cancel the distress relay call.

After the call is transmitted, the message "Wait for distress relay acknowledge." Appears. After you have received the distress acknowledgement from the coast station, communicate with the coast station by telephone, over the frequency specified. If you do not receive the distress acknowledgement from a coast station after the timer counts down to zero, choose RESEND and press the **ENTER** knob to transmit the distress relay again, over a different frequency.

4-13

4.3 Sending Distress Relay on Behalf of a Ship in Distress

4.3.1 Sending distress relay to coast station

You may send the distress relay to a coast station on behalf of a ship in distress in the following cases:

You are near the ship in distress and the ship in distress cannot transmit the distress alert.

When the master or person responsible for your ship considers that further assistance is necessary.

Note: In the above cases, never use the **DISTRESS** button.

1. Press the **DSC** key.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓   Select Message    ▓▓ │
├────────────────────┬───────────────────┤
│    GENERAL         │    DISTRESS       │
├────────────────────┼───────────────────┤
│ INDIVIDUAL         │ RELAY AREA        │
│ PSTN MESSAGE       │ RELAY COAST       │
│ TEST MESSAGE       │ DISTRESS          │
│ GROUP MESSAGE      │                   │
│ AREA MESSAGE       │                   │
│ POSITION           │ SPECIAL           │
├────────────────────┴───────────────────┤
│ MMSI 123456789                          │
│ POS 12°34.5678N        UTC  01:53       │
│     123°45.6789E       EPFS 01:54       │
└──────────────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose RELAY COAST and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COAST ID window.

```
┌──────────────┐
│ MANUAL       │
│ SELECT       │
└──────────────┘
```

4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MANUAL or SELECT.
   When you choose SELECT, a list of file names and ID numbers stored at MESSAGE menu appears (For details, see Chapter 6.) In this case you can choose a file name with ID number desired, and then push the **ENTER** knob and then go to step 6. When choosing MANUAL, go to step 5.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓    Compose msg.    ▓▓ │
├──────────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE: RELAY COAST                  │
├──────────────────────────────────────┤
│ COAST ID         ┌──────────────┐     │
│ SHIP ID IN D     │ 00 *******   │     │
│ NATURE: UN       │              │     │
│ POS: NO INFORMATION              │     │
│ COMM MODE    :   TELEPHONE             │
├──────────────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ.    :     8414.5 kHz          │
├──────────────────────────────────────┤
│            GO TO VIEW                  │
└──────────────────────────────────────┘
```

5. Key in COAST ID with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.

6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the SHIP ID IN DIST window.

```
┌────────────────────────────────┐
│  ▭▭      Compose msg.    ▭▭     │
│ MSG TYPE:    RELAY COAST        │
│ COAST ID:   ┌──────────┐        │
│ SHIP ID IN DIS│ SELECT │        │
│             │ MANUAL   │        │
│ NATURE : UN└──────────┘         │
│ POS.:       : NO INFORMATION    │
│ COMM MODE  :    TELEPHONE       │
│ DSC FREQ  :     8414.5 kHz      │
│              GO TO VIEW         │
└────────────────────────────────┘
```
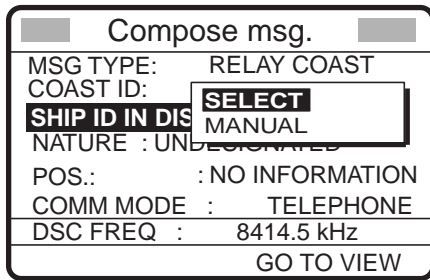
7. Choose MANUAL or SELECT, and then push the **ENTER** knob. When you choose SELECT, a list of file names and ID numbers stored at MESSAGE menu appears. Go to step 9. When choosing MANUAL, you can choose a file name with ID number desired, and go to step 8.

```
┌────────────────────────────────┐
│  ▭▭      Compose msg.    ▭▭     │
│ MSG TYPE: RELAY COAST           │
│ COAST ID    ┌──────────┐        │
│ SHIP ID IN D│*********│        │
│ NATURE: UN  │          │        │
│ POS: NO INFORMATION              │
│ COMM MODE    :   TELEPHONE      │
│ DSC FREQ.    :      8414.5 kHz  │
│              GO TO VIEW         │
└────────────────────────────────┘
```
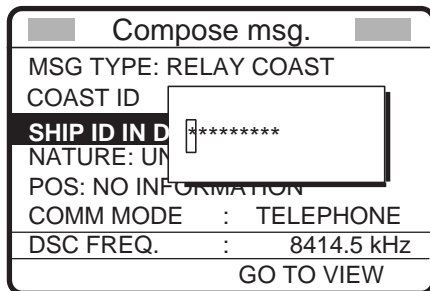
8. Key in ship's ID in distress with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob. If you do not know ID, press the **CANCEL** key.
9. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the NATURE menu.
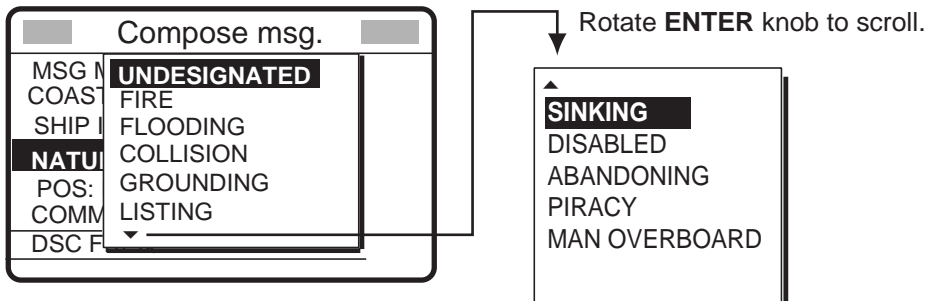
```
┌────────────────────────────────┐          Rotate ENTER knob to scroll.
│  ▭▭      Compose msg.    ▭▭     │
│ MSG N┌────────────────┐         │        ┌──────────────────┐
│ COAST│ UNDESIGNATED   │         │        │  ▲               │
│ SHIP │ FIRE           │         │        │ SINKING          │
│ NATU │ FLOODING       │         │        │ DISABLED         │
│ POS: │ COLLISION      │         │        │ ABANDONING       │
│ COMM │ GROUNDING      │         │        │ PIRACY           │
│ DSC F│ LISTING        │         │        │ MAN OVERBOARD    │
│      │  ▼             │         │        │                  │
└──────└────────────────┘─────────┘        └──────────────────┘
```

10. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose nature of distress and then push the **ENTER** knob. If you do not know the nature of distress, choose UNDESIGNATED.
11. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the POS. menu.

```
┌────────────────────────────────┐
│  ▭▭       Compose msg    ▭▭     │
│ M┌──────────────────────┐       │
│ C│ INPUT TYPE: EPFS     │       │
│ S│ LAT :   34°45.0000 N │       │
│ N│ LON : 135°22.0000 E  │       │
│ P│ TIME:  10:00  UTC    │       │
│ C└──────────────────────┘       │
│ DSC FREQ        :   8414.5 kHz  │
│              GO TO VIEW         │
└────────────────────────────────┘
```

4-15
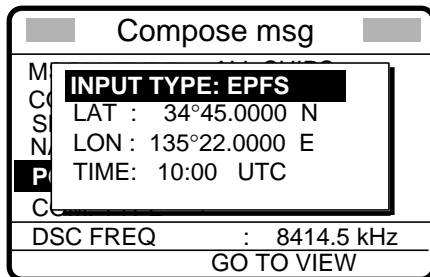
12. Enter position of ship in distress, following 1), 2) or 3) below.

   1) **For automatic input,** push the **ENTER** knob and choose EPFS. Then push **ENTER** knob and go to step 13.

   2) **For manual input,** push the **ENTER** knob to open the INPUT TYPE menu, rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MANUAL and then push the **ENTER** knob. Enter latitude and longitude of ship in distress and time as follows:

   a) Push the **ENTER** knob. Enter latitude and then push the **ENTER** knob.
   b) Push the **ENTER** knob. Enter longitude and then push the **ENTER** knob.
   c) Push the **ENTER** knob. Enter UTC time and then push the **ENTER** knob. Go to step 13.
   Note: If you cannot confirm time, enter 88:88 to input NO INFO as the time.

   3) **If you cannot confirm position of ship in distress,** push the **ENTER** knob to open the INPUT TYPE menu, rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose NO INFO and then push the **ENTER** knob twice. Go to step 13.

13. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COM. MODE menu.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▢      Compose msg.      ▢        │
├──────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE: RELAY COAST            │
│ COAST ID: 001234567              │
│ SHIP ID IN DIST : 123456789      │
│ NATURE  : UNDESIGNATED           │
│ POS: 34°45N  ┌TELEPHONE┐         │
│ COMM MODE    │ NBDP-FEC │        │
│              └──────────┘         │
│ DSC FREQ     : 8414.5 kHz        │
│              GO TO VIEW           │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```
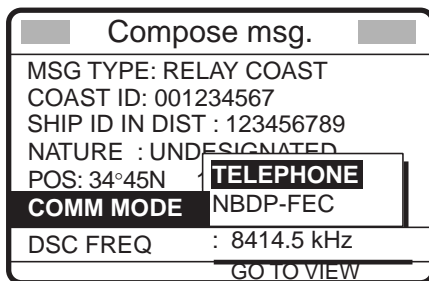
14. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose TELEPHONE and then push the **ENTER** knob. (NBDP-FEC may also be used.)

15. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▢      Compose msg.      ▢        │
├──────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE:  ┌ 2187.5              │
│ COAST ID : │ 4207.5              │
│ SHIP ID IN DI│ 6312.0            │
│ NATURE:  UN│ 8414.5              │
│ POS COM.M  │ 12577.0             │
│ DSC FREQ   │ 16804.5   ‹Hz       │
│            └                      │
│            GO TO VIEW             │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```
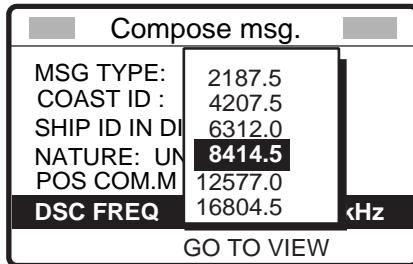
16. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate DSC (NBDP) frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob. The display now looks something like the one below in case of radiotelephone.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▢      Compose msg.      ▢        │
├──────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE       : RELAY COAST     │
│ COAST ID       : 001234567       │
│ SHIP ID IN DIST: NO INFO         │
│ NATURE         : SINKING         │
│ POS            : 34°45.0000N     │
│                  135°22.0000E AT 10:00│
│ COM. MODE      : TELEPHONE       │
│ DSC FREQ    :    8414.5 kHz      │
│              GO TO VIEW           │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```

4-16

17. Press the **CALL** key for three seconds, and the message "Priority distress transmit sure?" appears. Continue pressing the key until the display shows "Distress relay coast message in progress!" to send the distress relay call.

```
Priority distress
transmit sure?
COAST ID       : 001234567
SHIP ID IN DIST : NO INFO
NATURE         : SINKING
POS            : 34°45.0000 N
         135°22.0000 E  AT 10:00
COMM MODE  : TELEPHONE
DSC FREQ   :    8414.5 KHZ
KEEP PRESSED FOR        3S
```

CALL key pressed 3 seconds

→

```
Distress relay coast
message in progress!
DESTINATION ID:  001234567
SHIP ID IN DIST : NO INFO


DSC FREQ   :    8414.5 kHz
TIME TO GO  :    8S
```
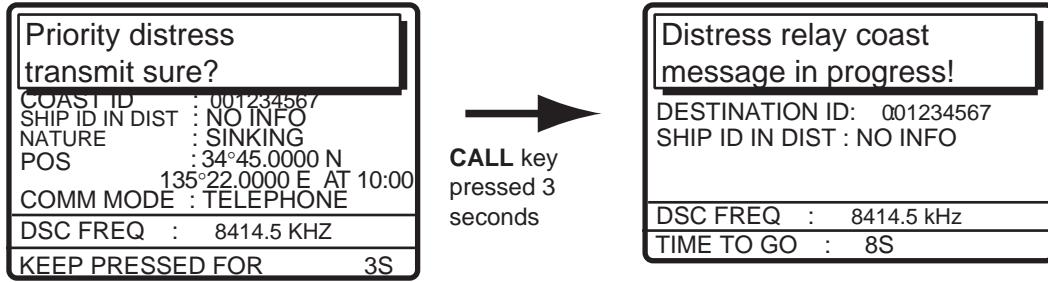
The equipment then waits for acknowledgement of the distress relay, displaying the message shown below. If the distress relay is not acknowledged within five minutes, the message "No response! Try calling again?" appears. If this occurs, send the distress relay again.

```
Wait for distress
relay acknowledge.
DESTINATION ID : 001234567
SHIP ID IN DIST: NO INFO



DSC FREQ       : 8414.5 kHz
TIME TO GO :   4M59S    RESENDING
```
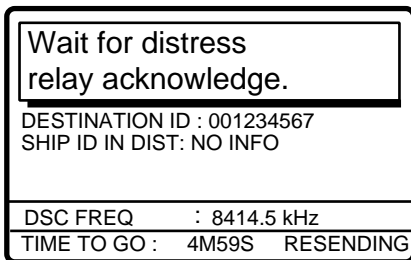
When you receive the distress relay acknowledge message, the audio alarm sounds and the display shown below appears.

```
Distress relay ack
message received.

CANCEL: STOP ALARM
NATURE       : SINKING
POS        : 12°34.0000 N  DIST: 5nm
         123°45.0000 E  AT 12:34
TELEPHONE       8291.0 kHz
```

18. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the audio alarm.

```
▮▮▮   Received message   ▮▮▮
MAY-23-2006-23:59
DISTRESS RELAY ACK
SENDER ID  :        001234567
SHIP ID IN DIST : NO INFO
NATURE       : SINKING
POS        : 12°34.0000 N  DIST: 5nm
         123°45.0000 E  AT 12:34
TELEPHONE  8291.0 kHz   10M10S
       GO TO VIEW
```
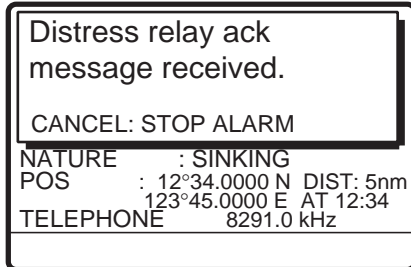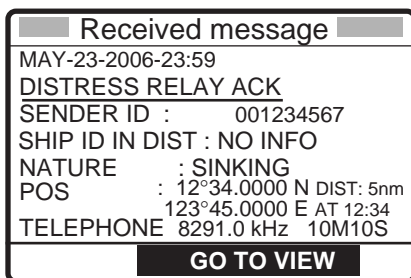
19. Communicate with the coast station.

4.3.2 Sending distress relay to area ships

Use this procedure to send the distress relay to area ships.

1. Press the **DSC** key.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓   Select Message    ▓▓    │
├──────────────┬───────────────┤
│  GENERAL     │  DISTRESS     │
├──────────────┼───────────────┤
│ █INDIVIDUAL█ │ RELAY AREA    │
│ PSTN MESSAGE │ RELAY COAST   │
│ TEST MESSAGE │ DISTRESS      │
│ GROUP MESSAGE│               │
│ AREA MESSAGE │               │
│ POSITION     │ SPECIAL       │
├──────────────┴───────────────┤
│ MMSI 123456789               │
│ POS 12°34.5678N   UTC  01:53 │
│     123°45.6789E  EPFS 01:54 │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose RELAY AREA and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the AREA menu.
4. You can choose QUAD or CIRCLE to set the area. The geographical area call is for sending a call to all ships within the area you designate in your geographical area call. In the figure below, for example, the call will be sent to all ships within 24-34°N, 135-140°W (QUAD) and 34°N, 140°W, range: 5 NM (CIRCLE).

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓   Compose msg.      ▓▓    │
├──────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE: RELAY AREA         │
│ AREA: █CIRCLE█ **°—→ **°     │
│        QUAD                  │
│ SHIP ID IN DIST : 123456789  │
│ NATURE: UNDESIGNATED         │
│ POS:  34°45.0000 N           │
│       135°45.0000 E  AT 9:30 │
│ COMM MODE    :  TELEPHONE    │
│ DSC FREQ.    :   8414.5 kHz  │
│         GO TO VIEW           │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

AREA line display

QUAD
"34° N 140°W↓ 10°→ 5°"

CIRCLE
"34° 00N 140° 00W   0500NM"

Reference point (For example, 34°N 140°W)

34°N
10°
24°N
5°
140°W   135°W

QUAD

500NM
Reference point (For example, 34°N 140°W)
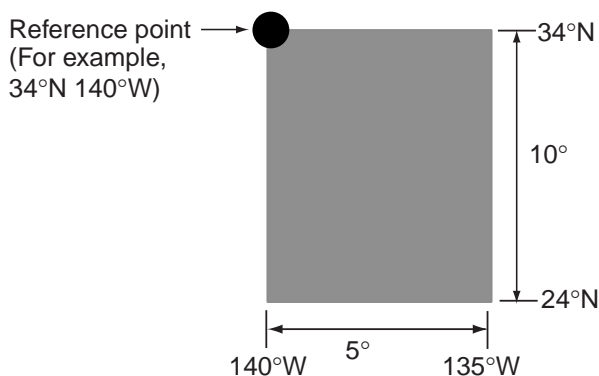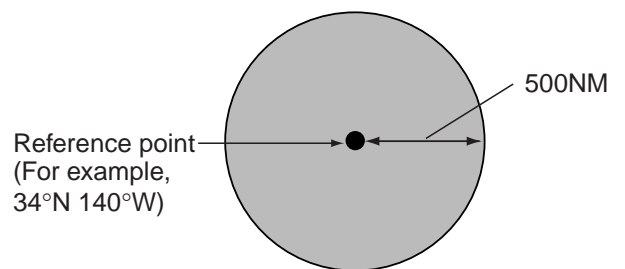
CIRCLE

5. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the SHIP ID IN DIST menu.
6. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MANUAL or SELECT. For MANUAL, key in ID of ship in distress (if known) with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob. (If you do not know the ID, press the **CANCEL** key.)

7. Push the ENTER knob to open the NATURE menu.
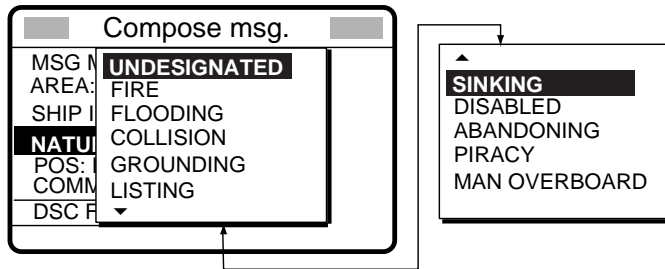
```
┌──────────────────────────┐      ┌──────────────────────┐
│ ▭▭   Compose msg.   ▭▭   │      │        ▲             │
│ MSG ┌─────────────────┐  │      │ ┌──────────────────┐ │
│ AREA:│ UNDESIGNATED    │  │      │ │ SINKING          │ │
│ SHIP │ FIRE            │  │      │ │ DISABLED         │ │
│ NATU │ FLOODING        │  │      │ │ ABANDONING       │ │
│ POS: │ COLLISION       │  │      │ │ PIRACY           │ │
│ COMM │ GROUNDING       │  │      │ │ MAN OVERBOARD    │ │
│ DSC F│ LISTING         │  │      │ └──────────────────┘ │
│      │ ▼               │  │      └──────────────────────┘
│      └─────────────────┘  │
└──────────────────────────┘
```

8. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose nature of distress and then push the **ENTER** knob. (If you do not know the nature of distress, choose UNDESIGNATED.)

9. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the POS. menu, where you enter the position of the ship in distress and time, manually or automatically.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│ ▭▭   Compose msg.   ▭▭   │
│ C ┌─────────────────────┐│
│ A │ INPUT TYPE: EPFS    ││
│ S │ LAT :   34°45.1234 N││
│ N │ LON : 135°45.1234 E ││
│ PO│ TIME:  09:30  UTC   ││
│ C └─────────────────────┘│
│ DSC FREQ      : 8414.5 kHz│
│        GO TO VIEW         │
└──────────────────────────┘
```
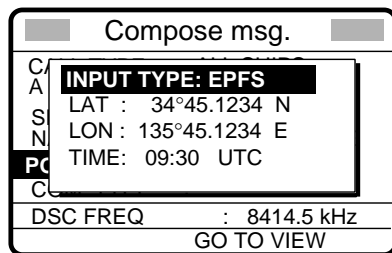
10. Enter position of the ship in distress, following 1), 2) or 3) below.

   1) **For automatic input,** push the **ENTER** knob and choose EPFS. Then push the **ENTER** knob and go to step 10.

   2) **For manual input,** push the **ENTER** knob to open the INPUT TYPE menu, rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MANUAL and then push the **ENTER** knob. Enter latitude and longitude of ship in distress and time as follows:

      a) Push the **ENTER** knob. Enter latitude and then push the **ENTER** knob.
      b) Push the **ENTER** knob. Enter longitude and then push the **ENTER** knob.
      c) Push the **ENTER** knob. Enter UTC time and then push the **ENTER** knob. Go to step 10.

      Note: If you cannot confirm time, enter 88:88 to input NO INFO as the time.

   3) **If you cannot confirm position of ship in distress,** push the **ENTER** knob to open the INPUT TYPE menu, rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose NO INFO and then push the **ENTER** knob twice. Go to step 10.

11. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COM. MODE menu.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│ ▭▭   Compose msg.   ▭▭   │
│ MSG TYPE:  RELAY AREA     │
│ AREA: 44°N 125°E↓17° → 21°│
│                           │
│ SHIP ID IN DIS┌──────────┐│
│ NATURE :      │TELEPHONE ││
│ POS: 34 45.00 │NBDP-FEC  ││
│ COMM MODE     └──────────┘│
│ DSC FREQ    :   8414.5 kHz│
│        GO TO VIEW         │
└──────────────────────────┘
```

12. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose TELEPHONE (or NBDP-FEC) and then push the **ENTER** knob.

4-19

13. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▭      Compose msg      ▭        │
│ MSG TYPE:  ┌──────────┐          │
│ AREA:      │ 2187.5   │          │
│ SHIP ID IN D│ 4207.5   │9        │
│ NATURE: UN │ 6312.0   │          │
│ POS: 34°45N │ 8414.5   │         │
│ COMM MODE  │ 12577.0  │          │
│ DSC FREQ   │ 16804.5  │KHZ       │
│            └──────────┘          │
│          GO TO VIEW             │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

14. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob. The display now looks something like the one below.
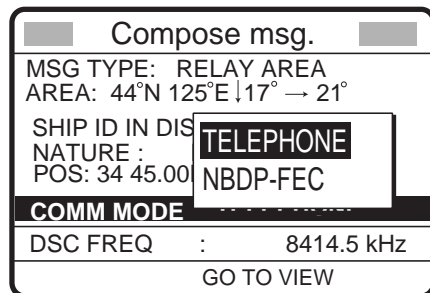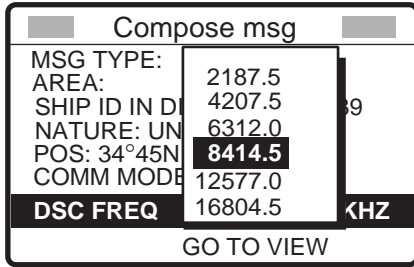
```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▭      Compose msg.     ▭        │
│ MSG TYPE:   RELAY AREA           │
│ AREA: 44°N 125°E ↓17°→21°        │
│ SHIP ID IN DIST:   123456789     │
│ NATURE:  UNDESIGNATED            │
│ POS:  34 45.0000N                │
│       135 45.0000E    AT 09:30   │
│ COMM MODE   :      TELEPHONE     │
│ DSC FREQ    :      8414.5 kHz    │
│            GO TO VIEW            │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```
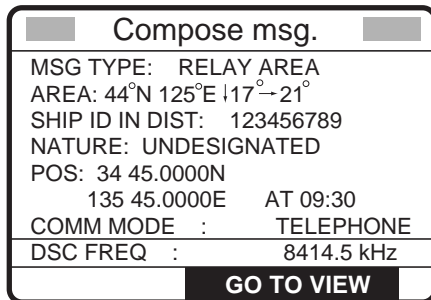
15. Press the **CALL** key for three seconds, and the message "Priority distress transmit sure?" appears. Continue pressing the key until the display shows "Distress relay area message in progress!" to send the distress relay call.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐          ┌──────────────────────────┐
│  Priority distress       │          │  Distress relay area     │
│  transmit sure?          │          │  message in progress!    │
│ NATURE:  UNDESIGNATED    │          │ SHIP ID IN DIST: 123456789│
│ POS:  34 45.0000N        │  CALL key│                          │
│       135 45.0000E AT 09:30│ pressed │                          │
│ COMM MODE    :  TELEPHONE │ 3 seconds│                          │
│ DSC FREQ  :    8414.5 kHz │          │ DSC FREQ  :   8414.5 kHz │
│ KEEP PRESSED FOR      3S  │          │ TIME TO GO:        8S    │
└──────────────────────────┘          └──────────────────────────┘
```
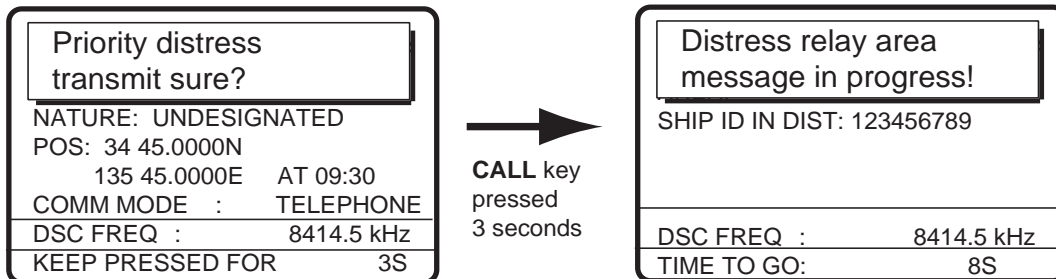
4.4 Receiving Distress Relay from Coast Station

Your ship receives the distress relay when:

• the coast station sends the distress relay to your ship. (DISTRESS RELAY COAST)

• the coast station sends the distress relay to the area where you are navigating.

When you receive a distress relay message from a coast station, continue monitoring distress and safety frequencies. The audio alarm sounds and the display looks like the one in the left-hand figure below when a distress relay is received from a coast station.

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the audio alarm, and the display changes as in the right-hand figure below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  Distress relay coast       │
│  message received.          │
│                             │
│  CANCEL: STOP ALARM         │
│  NATURE: UNDESIGNATED       │
│  POS: 12°34.000N   DIST: 14nm│
│       123°45.0000E  AT 12:34│
│  TELEPHONE      8291.5 kHz  │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

Press the
CANCEL key.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│▓▓▓▓Received message▓▓▓▓      │
│ MAY-23-2006-23:59           │
│ DISTRESS RELAY COAST        │
│ SENDER ID:        001234567 │
│ SHIP ID IN DIST:  123456789 │
│ NATURE: UNDESIGNATED        │
│ POS: 12°34.0000N   DIST: 14nm│
│      123°45.0000E   AT 12:34│
│ TELEPHONE  8291.5 kHz  10M10S│
│                 [GO TO VIEW]│
└─────────────────────────────┘
```
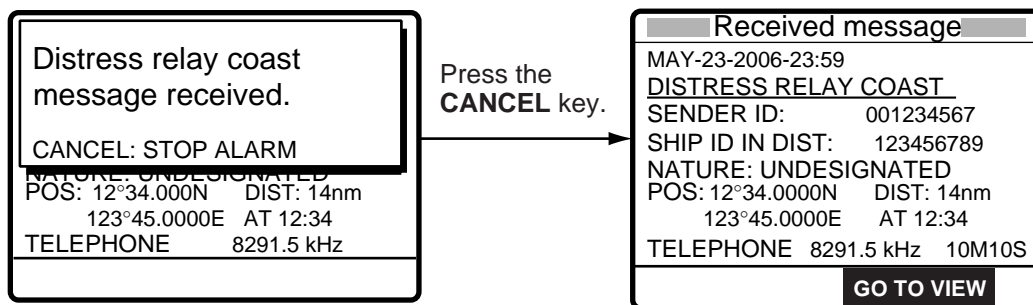
2. Press the **CANCEL** key to go to the radiotelephone screen.
3. Watch distress/safety frequency.

4.5 Cancelling Distress Call

You can cancel the distress call while it is being sent or while waiting for its acknowledgement as follows.

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to show the following display.
   The following message appears.
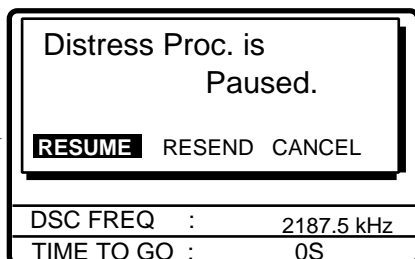
```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  Distress Proc. is          │
│            Paused.          │
│                             │
│  [RESUME]  RESEND  CANCEL   │
│                             │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ   :    2187.5 kHz  │
│ TIME TO GO :        0S      │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Choose CANCEL and push the **ENTER** knob to cancel the distress call.
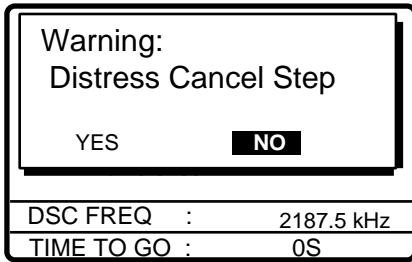
```
Warning:
 Distress Cancel Step

      YES            NO

 DSC FREQ    :      2187.5 kHz
 TIME TO GO  :         0S
```

3. Rotate the ENTER knob to choose YES, and then push the **ENTER** knob to show the following screen. The screen shows the used frequencies to send.

```
Distress Cancellation Proc.
Select frequency
and push ENTER.

 Cancel: Back to pause menu.

2M-2187.5 kHz       8M-8414.5kHz
4M-4207.5kHz       12M-12577.0kHz
6M-6312.0kHz       16M-16804.5kHz
```
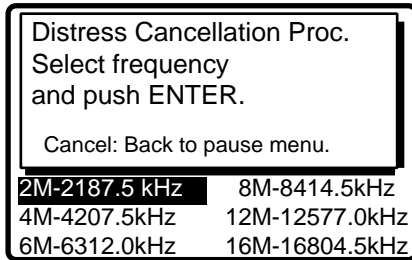
4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose the frequency which was used to send, and then press the **ENTER** knob.
    The cancellation message is transmitted over the same frequency used to transmit the distress call.

```
Now Transmitting  Distress
         Cancellation Message



2M-2187.5 kHz       8M-8414.5kHz
4M-4207.5kHz       12M-12577.0kHz
6M-6312.0kHz       16M-16804.5kHz
```
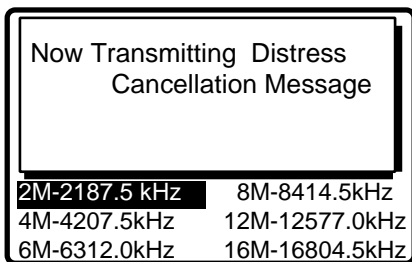
5. When the following screen appears, communicate with all ships via radio telephone.

```
Send cancel msg. by voice
          on 2182.0 kHz.


 Push any key: Go next step.

*2M-2187.5 kHz       8M-8414.5kHz
4M-4207.5kHz       12M-12577.0kHz
6M-6312.0kHz       16M-16804.5kHz
```
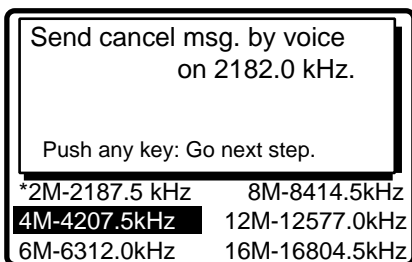
Asterisk marks the frequency over which
the cancellation call was transmitted..

6. Press any key.
    If you used other frequencies to send the distress call, the Distress Cancel sending starts over the next frequency to yourself. In this case, repeat step 3.
7. Repeat steps 4 through 6 to cancel for all frequencies.

When all cancellation is completed, the RT display appears.

5. ROUTINE MESSAGE CALLING, RECEIVING

5-1

Operation overview

The following shows about the individual message as example of the routine message. The individual call is for sending a call to a specific station.

1. Send the individual message.
2. Wait for the individual message acknowledgement.
3. Start the communication.

(1) DSC Message [Called Acknowledge Request (ACK RQ) Signal]

(2) Acknowledge Back (ACK BQ) Signal

(3) Voice or telex communication
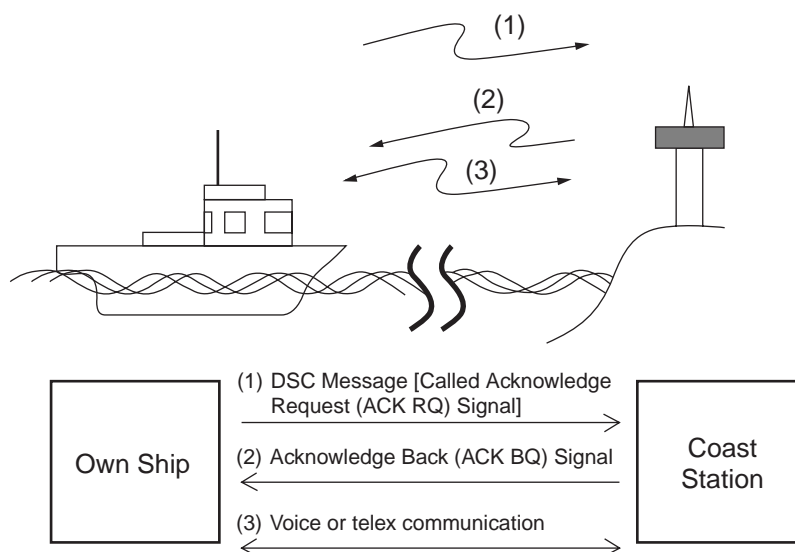
5.1 Individual Call

The individual call is for calling a specific station. After sending an individual call, called ACK RQ transmission, wait to receive the acknowledge back (ACK BQ) signal from the receiving station.

5.1.1 Sending an individual call

1. Press the DSC key.

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose INDIVIDUAL and then push the **ENTER** knob.

3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the STATION ID menu, and then rotate the ENTER knob to choose MANUAL or SELECT.
4. For SELECT, you can choose an ID from the message file list stored.
5. For MANUAL, use the numeric keys to key in the ID of the station where to send the call and then push the **ENTER** knob.
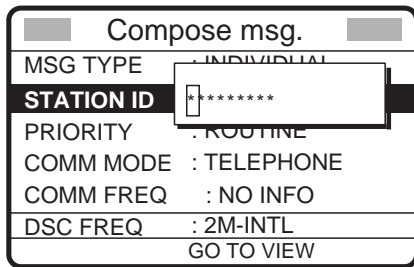
```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│  ▭   Compose msg.   ▭    │
├──────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE      : INDIVIDUAL│
│ STATION ID   [*]********  │
│ PRIORITY      : ROUTINE   │
│ COMM MODE   : TELEPHONE   │
│ COMM FREQ    : NO INFO    │
│ DSC FREQ     : 2M-INTL    │
│          GO TO VIEW       │
└──────────────────────────┘
```

6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the PRIORITY menu.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│  ▭   Compose msg.   ▭    │
├──────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE   ┌───────────┐  │
│ STATION ID │ ROUTINE   │  │
│ PRIORITY   │ SAFETY    │  │
│ COMM. MO   │ URGENCY   │E │
│ COMM. FRE  └───────────┘  │
│ DSC FREQ    : 2M-INTL     │
│          GO TO VIEW       │
└──────────────────────────┘
```
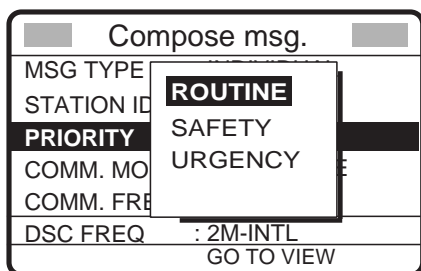
7. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate priority (normally ROUTINE) and then push the **ENTER** knob.
8. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COMM MODE menu.

For Safety or
Urgency Priority

```
┌──────────────────────────┐        ┌─────────────┐
│  ▭   Compose msg.   ▭    │        │ TELEPHONE   │
├──────────────────────────┤        │ NBPD        │
│ MSG TYPE      : INDIVIDUAL│        │ NBDP-FEC    │
│ STATION ID ┌────────────┐│        └─────────────┘
│ PRIORITY   │ TELEPHONE  ││
│ COMM MOD   │ NBDP-ARQ   ││──►
│ COMM FREC  │ NBDP-FEC   ││
│ DSC FREQ   │ DATA       ││
│            └────────────┘│
│          GO TO VIEW       │
└──────────────────────────┘
```
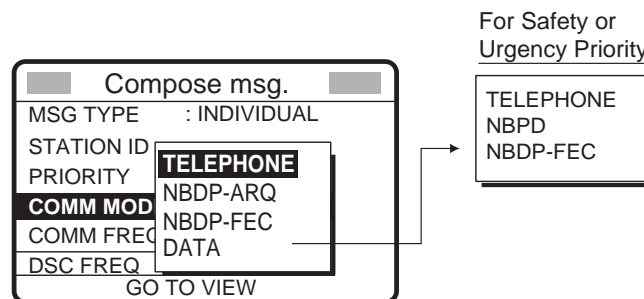
9. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose communications type desired and then push the **ENTER** knob.
10. For routine priority, push the **ENTER** knob to open the COMM FREQ menu. For safety and urgency priority, go to step 12.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│  ▭   Compose msg.   ▭    │
├──────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE      : INDIVIDUAL│
│ STATION ID    : 123456789 │
│ PRIORITY  ┌─────────────┐ │
│ COMM MOD  │ NO INFO     │ │
│ COMM FRE  │ FREQUENCY   │ │
│ DSC FREQ  │ CHANNEL     │ │
│           │ POSITION*   │ │
│           └─────────────┘ │
│          GO TO VIEW       │
└──────────────────────────┘
```
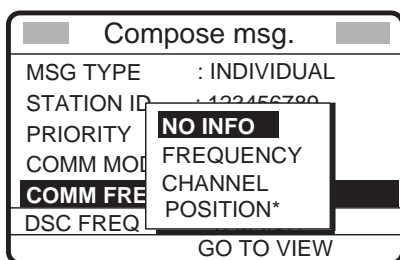
* POSITION is displayed if a coast station is specified at step 4.

11. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose communication frequency setting method desired and then push the **ENTER** knob. For FREQUENCY and CHANNEL, see "How to Set Working Frequency, Channel" on the next page. NO INFO and POSITION let the receiving station set the working frequency. Choose NO INFO or POSITION to send the call to a coast station; FREQUENCY or CHANNEL to send the call to a ship station.

How to Set Working Frequency, Channel

To send a call, set the working frequency as below, to communicate with the receiving station. The working frequency can be entered by Tx and Rx frequencies or channel number.

Routine priority

8. After selecting FREQUENCY or CHANNEL, one of the following pop-up windows appears.

TX: 0.0 kHz	TRX: 0.0 kHz	CH: 0
RX: 0.0 kHz		
(Coast station, Duplex)	(Mobile station, Simplex)	Channel

Frequency

a) Key in TX frequency or channel with the numeric keys. For channel, push the **ENTER** knob to finish.
b) Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose the RX field, key in RX frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob to finish.

Safety or urgency priority
For safety or urgency priority the communication frequency cannot be selected; it is automatically set to the pair frequency as set for the DSC frequency.

---

12. Follow the instructions on the next page to choose DSC frequency desired.

How to Set DSC Frequency

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DSC FREQ and then push the **ENTER** knob.

Compose msg.	
MSG TYPE:	**2 MHZ**
STATION ID:	4 MHZ
PRIORITY:	6 MHZ
COMM MODE:	8 MHZ
COMM FREQ:	12 MHZ
DSC FREQ : 2M-INTL	
GO TO VIEW	

16 MHZ
18 MHZ
22 MHZ
25 MHZ

Rotate the **ENTER** knob to scroll.
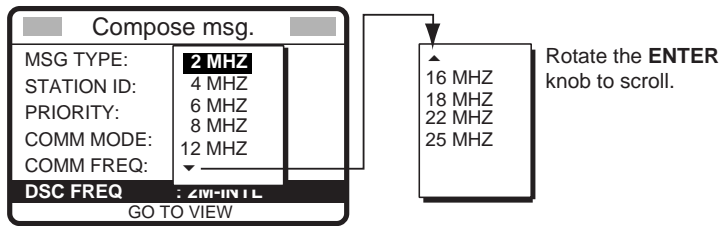
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate DSC band and then push the **ENTER** knob. One of the menus shown below appears depending on the band selected.

Compose msg.

MSG TYPE   2 MHz

INTL   : T12577.5/R12657.0
LOCAL1   : T12578.0/R12657.5
LOCAL2   : T12578.5/R12658.0

Rotate the **ENTER** knob to scroll menu to view user channels (if registered).

USER CH1 : T12345.0/R12345.0
USER CH2 : T12345.5/R12345.5
USER CH3 : T12346.0/R12346.0
USER CH4 : T12346.5/R12346.5

LOCAL = Local channel
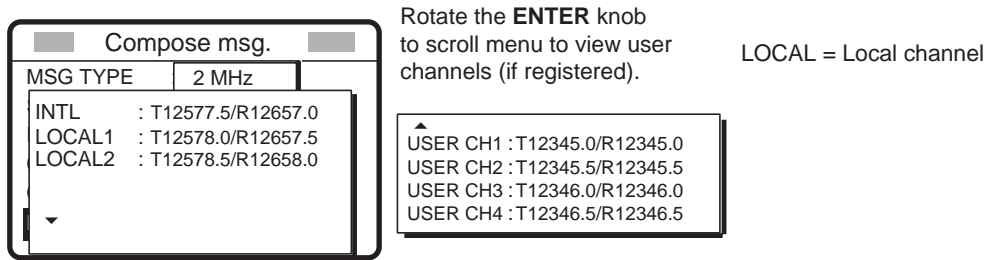
2MHz menu
INTL   :T 2189.5/R 2177.0

8MHz menu
INTL   :T 8415.0/R 8436.5
LOCAL   :T 8415.5/R8437.0
LOCAL   :T 8416.0/R8437.5

18MHz menu
INTL   :T18898.5/R19703.5
LOCAL1 :T18899.0/R19704.0
LOCAL2 :T18899.5/R19704.5

4MHz menu
INTL   :T 4208.0/R 4219.5
LOCAL1 :T 4208.5/R 4220.0
LOCAL2 :T 4209.0/R 4220.5

12MHz menu
INTL   :T 12577.5/R12657.0
LOCAL1 :T 12578.0/R12657.5
LOCAL2 :T 12578.5/R12658.0

22MHz menu
INTL   :T 22374.5/R22444.0
LOCAL1 :T 22375.0/R22444.5
LOCAL2 :T 22375.5/R22445.0

6MHz menu
INTL   :T 6312.5/R 6331.0
LOCAL1 :T 6313.0/R 6331.5
LOCAL2 :T 6313.5/R 6332.0

16MHz menu
INTL   :T 16805.0/R16903.0
LOCAL1 :T 16805.5/R16903.5
LOCAL2 :T 16806.0/R16904.0

25MHz menu
INTL   :T 25208.5/R26121.0
LOCAL1 :T 25209.0/R26121.5
LOCAL2 :T 25209.5/R26122.0

3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DSC frequency and then push the ENTER knob. The display shows the DSC frequency band selected, at "DSC FREQ".

Safety or urgency priority

For safety and/or urgency priority "COMM FREQ" is automatically set to the same pair frequency as the DSC frequency.

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DSC FREQ and then push the **ENTER** knob.

Compose msg.	
MSG TYPE:	**2187.5**
STATION ID:	4207.5
PRIORITY	6312.0
COMM MODE	8414.5
COMM FREQ	12577.0
	16804.5
DSC FREQ	
GO TO VIEW	
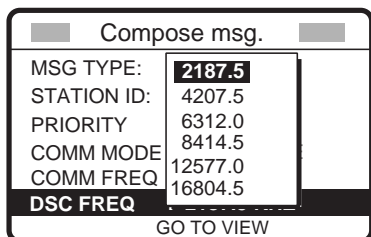
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob.

13. Press the **CALL** key to send the individual call (transmission time: about seven seconds). The display shows the message "Individual routine message in progress!" while the call is being sent.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ┌─────────────────────────┐ │
│ │ Individual routine      │ │
│ │ message in progress!    │ │
│ └─────────────────────────┘ │
│ DESTINATION ID:   123456789 │
│ PRIORITY      :   ROUTINE   │
│ TELEPHONE         2138.0 kHz│
│ DSC FREQ  :       2177.0 kHz│
│ TIME TO GO:          7S     │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

Note: When the channel is in use, "CH BUSY" appears at the lower left-hand side of the screen.
Press **CALL** key for forced transmission.

After the call is sent, the equipment waits for acknowledgement of the call, showing the display below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ┌─────────────────────────┐ │
│ │ Waiting for             │ │
│ │ acknowledgement.        │ │
│ └─────────────────────────┘ │
│ DESTINATION ID: 123456789   │
│ PRIORITY      : ROUTINE     │
│ TELEPHONE         2138.0 kHz│
│ DSC FREQ  :       2177.0 kHz│
│ TIME TO GO: 4M30S  RESENDING│
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

The timer starts counting down the maximum time to wait for acknowledgement, five minutes. One of the following three messages appears. ("No response! Try calling again?" appears after the timer counts down to zero. It means the receiving station did not respond.)

```
┌───────────────────────────┐
│ Able acknowledge          │
│ message received.         │
│   CANCEL: STOP ALARM      │
│ ───────────────────────── │
│ PRIORITY      : ROUTINE   │
│ TELEPHONE       2138.0 kHz│
│                           │
│                           │
└───────────────────────────┘
```
Able acknowledge call received

```
┌───────────────────────────┐
│ Unable acknowledge        │
│ message received.         │
│   CANCEL: STOP ALARM      │
│ ───────────────────────── │
│ SENDER ID  :    123456789 │
│ PRIORITY   :    ROUTINE   │
│                           │
└───────────────────────────┘
```
Unable acknowledge call received

```
┌───────────────────────────┐
│ No response!              │
│ Try calling again?        │
│ ───────────────────────── │
│ DESTINATION ID:  123456789│
│ PRIORITY    :    ROUTINE  │
│ TELEPHONE        2138.0 kHz│
│ DSC FREQ    :    2177.0 kHz│
│                    RESEND │
└───────────────────────────┘
```
No response from station
(appears when the timer counts to "zero")

14. Do one of the following depending on the message shown in step 12.

Able acknowledge call received

Communicating by radiotelephone

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the audio alarm, and the display changes as below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  ████  Received message ████ │
│ ─────────────────────────    │
│ MAR-23-2006-23:59            │
│ ABLE ACKNOWLEDGE             │
│ SENDER ID:        123456789  │
│ PRIORITY : ROUTINE  TX:2138.0kHz │
│ TELEPHONE      RX: 2138.0kHz │
│                       10M10S │
│ ─────────────────────────    │
│          █ GO TO VIEW █      │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```
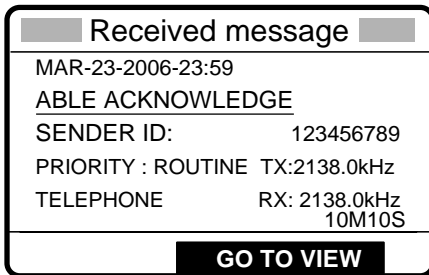
2. Press the **CANCEL** key to go to the radiotelephone screen.
3. The working frequency is automatically set; you may start voice communications by radiotelephone.

Sending message by NBDP Terminal Unit

The message "STATION ENTRY COMPLETED FROM DSC. Press any key to escape."
Appears on the NBDP's display.

1. Press any key on the NBDP Terminal Unit to erase the message.
2. Press the function key F3 on the keyboard of the NBDP Terminal Unit to show the Operate menu.
3. Choose "Call Station" and then press the Enter key.
4. "DSC" is selected; press the Enter key. "Connect" appears in reverse video.
5. Type and transmit your message.
6. When you have finished sending your message, press the **F10** key to disconnect the line.

Unable acknowledge call received

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The display looks something like the one below.

```
┌───────────────────────────┐
│ ████ Received message ████ │
│ ──────────────────────     │
│ MAR-23-2006-23:59          │
│ UNABLE ACKNOWLEDGE         │
│ NO REASON GIVEN            │
│                            │
│ SENDER ID:   123456789     │
│ PRIORITY:    ROUTINE 10M10S│
│       █ GO TO VIEW █       │
└───────────────────────────┘
```

Reason for unable to acknowledge:
NO REASON GIVEN
CONGESTION AT SWITCHING CENTRE*
BUSY
QUEUE INDICATION*
STATION BARRED*
NO OPERATOR AVAILABLE*
OPERATOR TEMPORARILY UNAVAILABLE*
EQUIPMENT DISABLE
MODE NOT USABLE
CHANNEL NOT USABLE

* Coast station use

2. If the coast station sends the message "QUEUE INDICATION," wait until your turn arrives.

No response! Try calling again?

Re-send call: Push the **ENTER** knob followed by pressing the **CALL** key.
Cancel call: Press the **CANCEL** key to go to DSC screen.

5.1.2 Receiving an individual call

Acknowledgement is able or unable depending on the comply-type setting (see section 6.11). The relationship between comply type and able/unable acknowledge is as shown in the table below.

Setting for ACK/SQ key	ABLE	UNABLE
AUTO ACK	Can send ABLE acknowledge automatically	Can send UNABLE acknowledge automatically.
MANUAL ACK	Send ABLE acknowledge manually	Send UNABLE acknowledge manually

Note: The handset must be on hook to enable automatic acknowledge.

Sending automatic acknowledge (ACK BQ) with comply type "ABLE"

When an individual call is received and the automatic acknowledge feature is active (AUTO ACK) and the comply type is "ABLE," the display shown below appears. This display indicates that the auto acknowledge (ACK BQ) call is being sent.

```
Able acknowledge
message in progress!
DESTINATION ID:      123456789
PRIORITY     :        ROUTINE
TELEPHONE          2138.0 kHz
DSC FREQ  :        2177.0 kHz
TIME TO GO:            6S
```

It takes about seven seconds to transmit the call, after which the audio alarm sounds and the following message appears.

```
Able acknowledge
message transmitted.
   CANCEL: STOP ALARM
PRIORITY:  ROUTINE  TX: 2138.0 kHz
TELEPHONE          RX: 2138.0 kHz
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The following display appears.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│  �ču    Xmitted message    ▒▒     │
│ ┌──────────────────────────────┐ │
│ │ MAR-23-2006-23:01            │ │
│ │ ABLE ACKNOWLEDGEMENT         │ │
│ │ DESTINATION ID:   123456789  │ │
│ │ PRIORITY  : ROUTINE  TX: 2138.0 kHz │
│ │ TELEPHONE         RX: 2138.0 kHz │
│ │                   10M10S     │ │
│ └──────────────────────────────┘ │
│ RESEND              │GO TO VIEW│  │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Press the **CANCEL** key. You can now communicate with the party, over the radiotelephone frequency specified or by the NBDP terminal unit.

Communicating by NBDP Terminal Unit

After acknowledging an individual call, do the following to communicate by NBDP Terminal Unit. The control unit's display shows "OCCUPIED" and the Tx and Rx frequencies. The message from the other station appears on your NBDP Terminal Unit.

1. After receiving the message from other station, type your message and then transmit it.
2. Press the function key **F10** (BREAK) to disconnect the line.

Sending automatic acknowledge (ACK BQ) with comply type "UNABLE"

When an individual call is received and the automatic acknowledge feature is active (AUTO ACK) and comply type is "UNABLE," the display shown below appears, indicating that the auto acknowledge call (ACK BQ) with UNABLE is being sent.
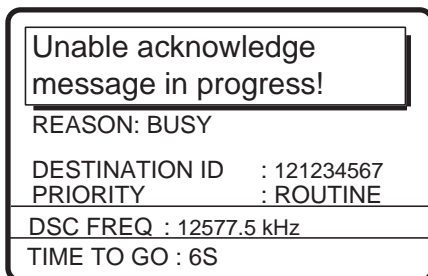
```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│ ┌──────────────────────────────┐ │
│ │ Unable acknowledge           │ │
│ │ message in progress!         │ │
│ └──────────────────────────────┘ │
│ REASON: BUSY                      │
│                                   │
│ DESTINATION ID   : 121234567      │
│ PRIORITY         : ROUTINE        │
│ DSC FREQ : 12577.5 kHz            │
│ TIME TO GO : 6S                   │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```

It takes about seven seconds to transmit the call, after which the audio alarm sounds and the following message appears.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│ ┌──────────────────────────────┐ │
│ │ Unable acknowledge           │ │
│ │ message transmitted.         │ │
│ │    CANCEL: STOP ALARM        │ │
│ └──────────────────────────────┘ │
│ DESTINATION ID   : 121234567      │
│ PRIORITY         : ROUTINE        │
│                                   │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The following display appears.

5-8

```
■■ Xmitted message ■■
JUL-23-2006-23:01
UNABLE ACKNOWLEDGE
 BUSY

DESTINATION ID :  121234567
PRIORITY       :  ROUTINE
                        10M10S
   RESEND          GO TO VIEW
```
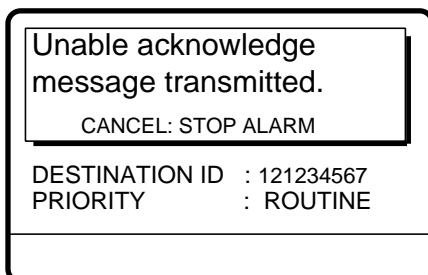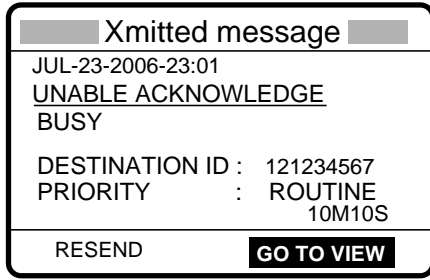
2. Push the **ENTER** knob to confirm the message.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to scroll the message.

Manually acknowledging individual call with "ABLE"

When an individual call is received and the equipment is set up with manual acknowledge (MANUAL ACK), the alarm sounds and the display looks like the one below.
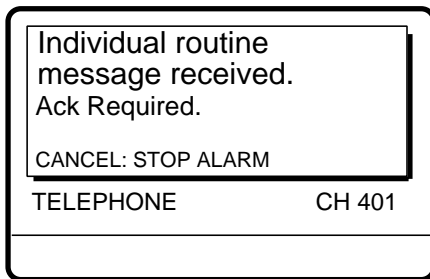
```
Individual routine
message received.
Ack Required.

CANCEL: STOP ALARM
TELEPHONE            CH 401
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The display changes as shown below.

```
■■ Received message ■■
MAR-23-2006-23:00:00
INDIVIDUAL REQUEST
SENDER ID:       001234567
PRIORITY:          ROUTINE
TELEPHONE        CH 401
                       10M10S
   ANSWER          GO TO VIEW
```
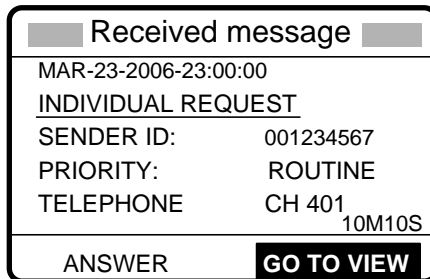
To view contents, rotate **ENTER** knob to choose GO TO VIEW and then push **ENTER** knob.

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ANSWER and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MSG TYPE and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
■■   Compose msg.   ■■
MSG TYPE : ABLE
         ACKNOWLEDGEMENT
STATION ID        ABLE      7
COMM MODE       UNABLE   ONE
COMM FREQ   : CH 401
DSC FREQ    : 4M-INTL
            GO TO VIEW
```
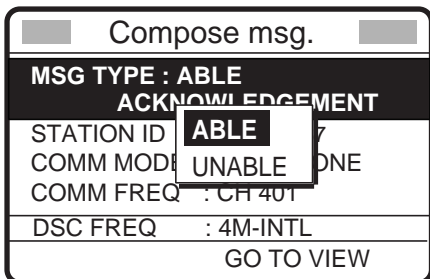
4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ABLE and then push the **ENTER** knob. The display changes as below.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▢▢      Compose msg.      ▢▢      │
│ ┌──────────────────────────────┐ │
│ │ MSG TYPE:    ABLE            │ │
│ │             ACKNOWLEDGEMENT  │ │
│ │ STATION ID:  121234567       │ │
│ │ COMM MODE: TELEPHONE         │ │
│ │ COMM FREQ: CH401             │ │
│ │ DSC FREQ:   4M-INTL          │ │
│ │              GO TO VIEW      │ │
│ └──────────────────────────────┘ │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```

5. Press the **CALL** key to send the acknowledge call. The display changes as below.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│ ┌──────────────────────────────┐ │
│ │ Able acknowledge             │ │
│ │ message in progress!         │ │
│ └──────────────────────────────┘ │
│   DESTINATION ID   : 121234567   │
│   PRIORITY         : ROUTINE     │
│   TELEPHONE            CH 401     │
│   DSC FREQ  :          4208.0 kHz │
│   TIME TO GO:            7S       │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```
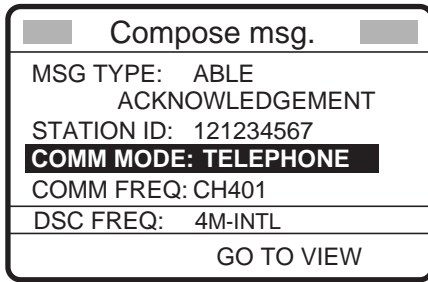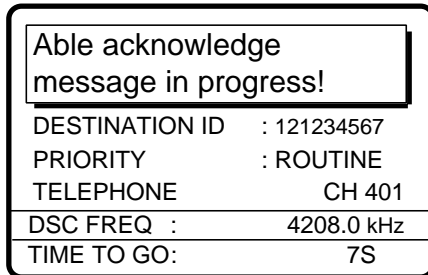
6. After the call is completely sent (transmission time: 7 sec.), push the **CANCEL** key twice to show the radiotelephone screen (if the communications mode is telephone).
7. You can begin voice communications by radiotelephone. For NBDP operation, do the following:

Communicating by NBDP Terminal Unit

After acknowledging an individual call, do the following to communicate by NBDP Terminal Unit. The control unit's display shows "OCCUPIED" and the Tx and Rx frequencies. The message from the other party appears on your NBDP Terminal Unit.

1. After receiving the message from the other party, type your message and transmit it.
2. Press the function key F10 (BREAK) to disconnect the line.

Manually acknowledging individual call with "UNABLE"

When an individual call is received and the equipment is set up with manual acknowledge, the alarm sounds and the display shows the message "Individual xxx (priority name) message received."
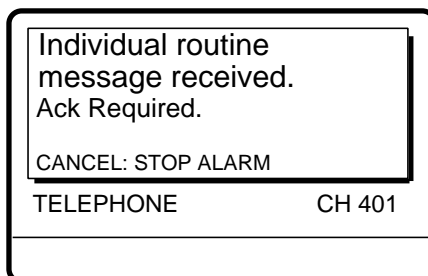
```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│ ┌──────────────────────────────┐ │
│ │ Individual routine           │ │
│ │ message received.            │ │
│ │ Ack Required.                │ │
│ │                              │ │
│ │ CANCEL: STOP ALARM           │ │
│ └──────────────────────────────┘ │
│   TELEPHONE            CH 401     │
│                                  │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The display changes as below.

5-10

```
████ Received message ████
MAR-23-2006-23:00:00
INDIVIDUAL REQUEST
SENDER ID:      121234567
PRIORITY: ROUTINE
TELEPHONE         CH 401
                     10M10S
ANSWER          GO TO VIEW
```

To view contents, rotate **ENTER** knob
to choose GO TO VIEW and then push
the **ENTER** knob.

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ANSWER and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MSG TYPE and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
████ Compose msg. ████
MSG TYPE : ABLE
        ACKNOWLEDGEMENT
STATION ID         ABLE      7
COMM MODE  UNABLE   ONE
COMM FREQ   : CH401
DSC FREQ:    4M-INTL
        GO TO VIEW
```
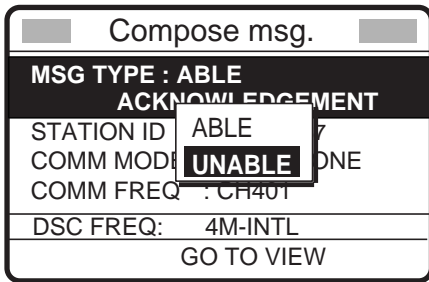
4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose UNABLE and then push the **ENTER** knob.
5. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the REASON menu.

```
████ Compose msg. ████
MSG TYPE   : UNABLE
    AC  NO REASON
REASON  BUSY
        EQUIP DISABLED
STATION MODE NOT USABLE
DSC FRE CH NOT USABLE
```
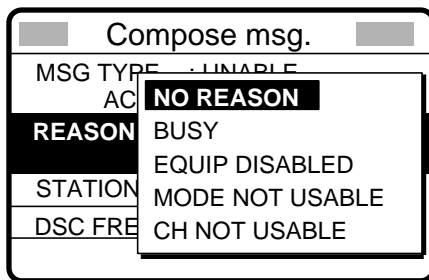
6. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose an appropriate reason and then push the **ENTER**
    knob. The display changes as below.

```
████ Compose msg. ████
MSG TYPE    : UNABLE
      ACKNOWLEDGEMENT
REASON       : CHANNEL NOT
                 USABLE
STATION ID  : 121234567
DSC FREQ     : 4M-INTL
            GO TO VIEW
```
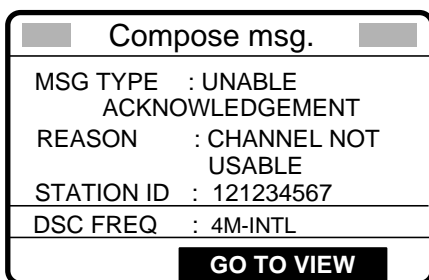
7. Press the **CALL** key to send the acknowledge call. The display shows "Unable
    acknowledge message in progress!" while the call is being sent.

```
Unable acknowledge
message in progress!
REASON: CHANNEL NOT USABLE
DESTINATION ID:  121234567
PRIORITY:        ROUTINE
DSC FREQ  :      4208.0 KHZ
TIME TO GO:           6S
```
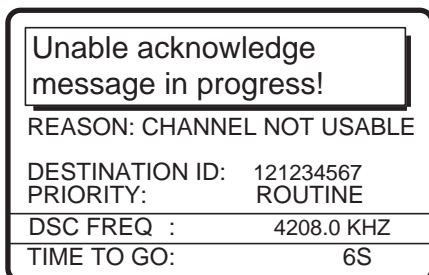
The timer counts down the time remaining until the call is completed (transmission time: about seven seconds).

8. Press the **CANCEL** key twice to show the radiotelephone screen.

5.2 Group Call

A group call is for calling a specific group by specifying its group ID.

5.2.1 Sending a group call

1. Press the **2/DSC** key.

```
┌────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▦      Select Message      ▦   │
├────────────────┬───────────────┤
│   GENERAL      │   DISTRESS     │
│ ▐INDIVIDUAL▌   │ RELAY AREA     │
│ PSTN MESSAGE   │ RELAY COAST    │
│ TEST MESSAGE   │ DISTRESS       │
│ GROUP MESSAGE  │                │
│ AREA MESSAGE   │                │
│ POSITION       │ SPECIAL        │
├────────────────┴───────────────┤
│  MMSI 123456789                 │
│  POS 12°34.5678N    UTC  01:53  │
│      123°45.6789E   EPFS 01:54  │
└────────────────────────────────┘
```

1. Choose GROUP MESSAGE and then push the **ENTER** knob.
2. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the GROUP ID menu, and then rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MANUAL or SELECT.
3. For SELECT, you can choose an ID from the message file list stored.
4. For MANUAL, key in group ID (eight digits) with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▦       Compose msg.       ▦   │
├────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE     : GROUP MESSAGE    │
│ ▐GROUP ID▌  0 * * * * * * *     │
│ PRIORITY      : ROUTINE         │
│ COMM MODE   : TELEPHONE         │
│ COMM FREQ   : NO INFO           │
│ DSC FREQ    : 2M-INTL           │
│              GO TO VIEW         │
└────────────────────────────────┘
```

5. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COMM MODE menu.

```
┌────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▦       Compose msg.       ▦   │
├────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE    ▐TELEPHONE▌         │
│ GROUP ID     NBDP-FEC           │
│ PRIORITY                        │
│ ▐COMM MODE▌  : TELEPHONE        │
│ COMM FREQ   : NO INFO           │
│ DSC FREQ    : 2M-INTL           │
│              GO TO VIEW         │
└────────────────────────────────┘
```

6. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose communication type desired and then push the **ENTER** knob.
7. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COMM FREQ menu.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ██      Compose msg.      ██     │
│ MSG TYPE      : GROUP MESSAGE    │
│ GROUP ID      ┌──────────────┐   │
│ PRIORITY      │ FREQUENCY    │   │
│ COMM MODE     │ CHANNEL      │   │
│ COMM FREQ     └──────────────┘   │
│ ───────────────────────────────  │
│ DSC FREQ      : 2M-INTL          │
│          GO TO VIEW              │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```
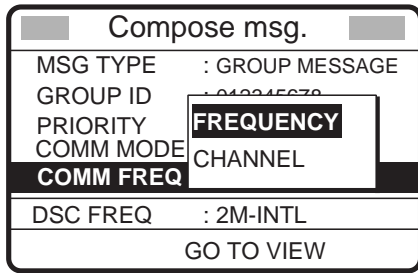
8. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose communication frequency desired and then push the ENTER knob. (See page 5-3 for details.) NO INFO lets other party choose communication frequency.

9. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.
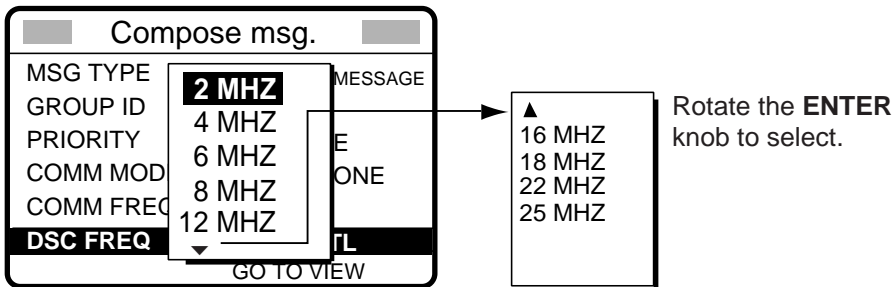
```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐         ┌──────────────┐
│ ██      Compose msg.      ██     │         │ ▲            │   Rotate the ENTER
│ MSG TYPE    ┌─────────┐ MESSAGE  │  ───▶   │ 16 MHZ       │   knob to select.
│ GROUP ID    │ 2 MHZ   │          │         │ 18 MHZ       │
│ PRIORITY    │ 4 MHZ   │ E        │         │ 22 MHZ       │
│ COMM MOD    │ 6 MHZ   │ ONE      │         │ 25 MHZ       │
│ COMM FREQ   │ 8 MHZ   │          │         │              │
│ ──────────  │ 12 MHZ  │ ──────── │         └──────────────┘
│ DSC FREQ    │ ▼       │ TL       │
│            └─────────┘           │
│          GO TO VIEW              │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

10. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DSC band desired and then push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

11. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DSC frequency desired and then push the **ENTER** knob. (See "How to Set DSC Frequency" on page 5-4 for details.)

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ██      Compose msg.      ██     │
│ MSG TYPE      : GROUP MESSAGE    │
│ GROUP ID      : 012345678        │
│ PRIORITY      : ROUTINE          │
│ COMM MODE     : TELEPHONE        │
│ COMM FREQ     : 2164.0 kHz       │
│ ───────────────────────────────  │
│ DSC FREQ      : 2M-INTL          │
│          GO TO VIEW              │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```
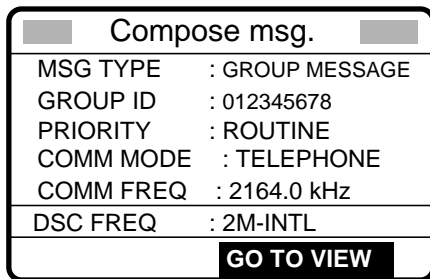
12. Press the **CALL** key to send the group call (transmission time: about seven seconds). The display shows "Group message in progress!" while the call is being sent.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│  Group                          │
│  message in progress!            │
│ ───────────────────────────────  │
│  SENDER ID :      012345678      │
│  PRIORITY   :      ROUTINE       │
│  TELEPHONE         2164.0 kHz    │
│ ───────────────────────────────  │
│  DSC FREQ      :   2177.0 kHz    │
│ ───────────────────────────────  │
│  TIME TO GO    :       6S        │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```
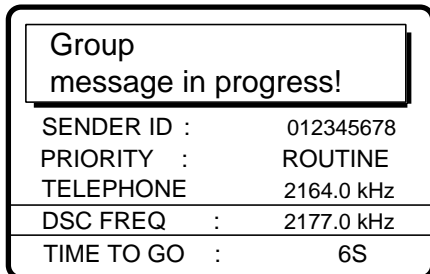
13. Press the **CANCEL** key twice to show the radiotelephone screen after the call is sent.

14. If you selected TELEPHONE at step 7, communicate by radiotelephone. For NBDP, do the following:
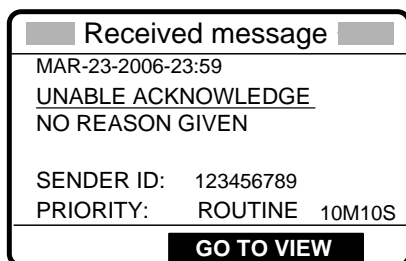
Sending message by NBDP Terminal Unit

The message "STATION ENTRY COMPLETED FROM DSC. Press any key to escape."
Appears on the NBDP's display.

1. Press any key on the NBDP Terminal Unit to erase the message.
2. Press the function key F3 on the keyboard of the NBDP Terminal Unit to show the
   Operate menu.
3. Choose "Call Station" and then press the Enter key.
4. "DSC" is selected; press the Enter key. "Connect" appears in reverse video.
5. Type and transmit your message.
6. When you have finished sending your message, press the F10 key to disconnect the
   line.

5.2.2   Receiving a group call

Group ID must be registered in order to receive a group call.

The audio alarm sounds and the display shows "Group message received" when a group
call is received.

```
Group
message received.
    CANCEL: STOP ALARM

PRIORITY:  ROUTINE    TX: 2164.0 kHz
TELEPHONE             RX: 2164.0 kHz
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The display changes as below.

```
      Received message
MAR-23-2006-23:59
GROUP MESSAGE
SENDER ID :           123456789
PRIORITY:  ROUTINE  TX: 2164.0 kHz
TELEPHONE           RX: 2164.0 kHz

                       2M14S
          GO TO VIEW
```
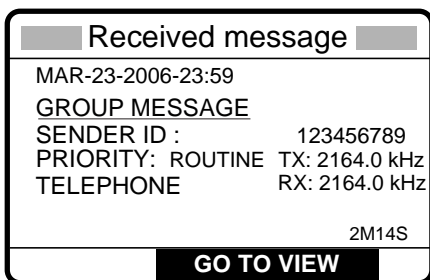
2. Press the **CANCEL** key to go to the radiotelephone screen. Watch on the working
   frequency. If there is the difference between the registered frequency and used
   frequency to receive, the following screens appear. Choose Agree for the voice
   communication, or Disagree when you do not change the frequency.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐                    ┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  Change COM Frequency       │  Choose "Pause".   │  Change COM Frequency       │
│    Agree      Disagree      │ ─────────────────> │  [Agree]      Disagree      │
│  Count down xx sec. [Pause] │                    │  Count down has been paused.│
└─────────────────────────────┘                    └─────────────────────────────┘
```

After 10 seconds passed or when "Agree" is chosen,
the working frequency is changed with the message
shown below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│   Accept New                │
│      Working Freq           │
│                             │
│      CANCEL: CLOSE WINDOW   │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

Choose "Agree".
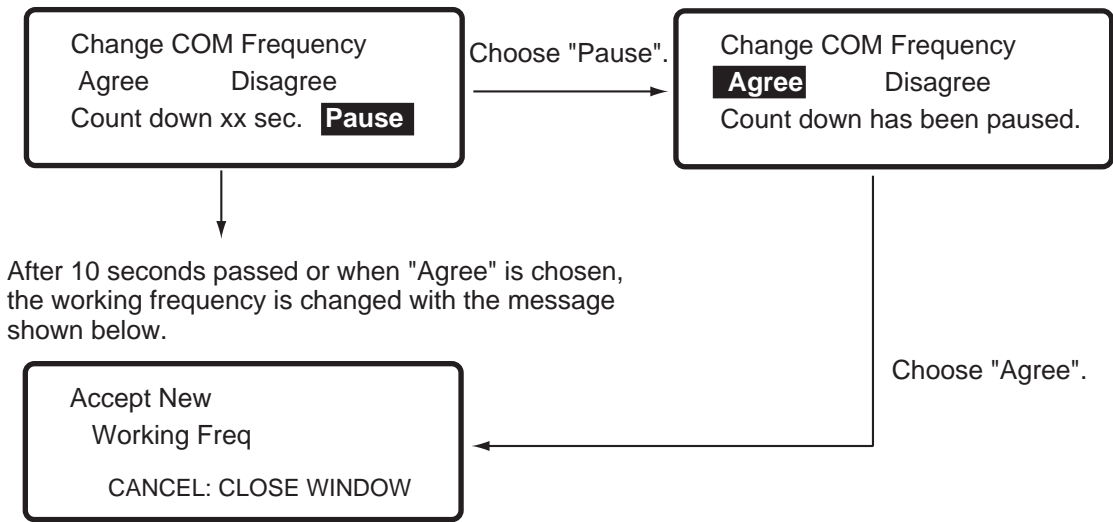
Receiving message by NBDP Terminal Unit

After receiving a group call, confirm the following.

•The control unit's display shows "OCCUPIED" and the Tx and Rx frequencies.
•The message from the sending station appears on your NBDP Terminal Unit.

5.3   Geographical Area Call

The geographical area call is for sending a call to all ships within the area you designate in
your geographical area call. In the figure below, for example, the call will be sent to all ships
within 24-34°N, 135-140°W (QUAD) and 34°N, 140°W, range: 500 NM (CIRCLE).

Note: At the high-latitude area, set the area so that the longitude is within 99°. If the setting
is over 99°, it may be adjusted automatically.

Reference point ⟶
(For example,
34°N 140°W)

34°N

10°

24°N

140°W   5°   135°W

QUAD

500NM

Reference point ⟶
(For example,
34°N 140°W)

CIRCLE

5.3.1 Sending a geographical area call

1. Press the **2/DSC** key.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│  ▭▭    Select Message    ▭▭     │
├────────────────┬────────────────┤
│   GENERAL      │   DISTRESS     │
├────────────────┼────────────────┤
│ INDIVIDUAL     │ RELAY AREA     │
│ PSTN MESSAGE   │ RELAY COAST    │
│ TEST MESSAGE   │ DISTRESS       │
│ GROUP MESSAGE  │                │
│ AREA MESSAGE   │                │
│ POSITION       │ SPECIAL        │
├────────────────┴────────────────┤
│ MMSI 123456789                  │
│ POS 12°34.5678N    UTC  01:53   │
│     123°45.6789E   EPFS 01:54   │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```
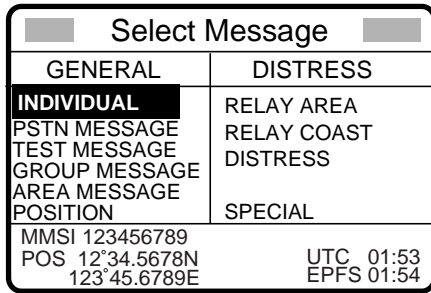
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose AREA MESSAGE and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the AREA menu, then choose QUAD or CIRCLE and push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐   ┌────────────────────────────────┐
│  ▭▭   Compose msg.    ▭▭     │   │ AREA line display              │
├──────────────────────────────┤   │                                │
│ MSG TYPE    : AREA MESSAGE   │   │ QUAD                           │
│ AREA    [ ]                  │──▶│ "44° N 125° E↓ 17°►  21°"      │
│ PRIORITY    : SAFETY         │   │                                │
│ COMM MODE  : TELEPHONE       │   │ CIRCLE                         │
│ COMM FREQ  : 2182.0 kHz      │   │ "44° 33N 125° 33E   0500NM"    │
│ DSC FREQ    : 2187.5 kHz     │   │                                │
│          GO TO  VIEW         │   └────────────────────────────────┘
└──────────────────────────────┘
```
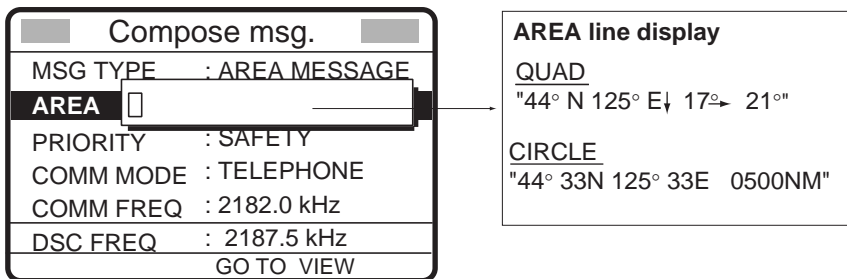
4. **For QUAD:** Using the numeric keys, enter latitude and longitude of reference point and southerly degrees and easterly degrees of area. To change coordinate, choose it and press the **1** key for North or East; **2** key for South or West. After entering data, push the **ENTER** knob.
5. **For CIRCLE:** Using the numeric keys, enter latitude and longitude of reference point and radius of area. To change coordinate, choose it and press the **1** key for North or East; **2** key for South or West. After entering data, push the **ENTER** knob.
6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the PRIORITY menu.
7. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose priority desired and then push the **ENTER** knob.
8. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COM. MODE menu.
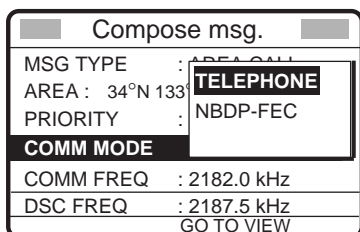
```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│  ▭▭   Compose msg.    ▭▭     │
├──────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE     : AREA CALL     │
│ AREA :  34°N 133┌───────────┐│
│ PRIORITY     :  │ TELEPHONE ││
│                 │ NBDP-FEC  ││
│ COMM MODE       └───────────┘│
├──────────────────────────────┤
│ COMM FREQ  : 2182.0 kHz      │
│ DSC FREQ    : 2187.5 kHz     │
│          GO TO VIEW          │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

9. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose communication type desired and then push the **ENTER** knob.
10. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

11. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DSC frequency desired and then push the **ENTER** knob. (See "How to Set DSC Frequency" on page 5-4 for details.) Your display should now look something like one below.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ �   Compose msg.   block  │
│ MSG TYPE      : AREA MESSAGE  │
│ AREA : 34°N 140°W ↓10° →5°    │
│ PRIORITY      : SAFETY        │
│ COMM MODE     : TELEPHONE     │
│ COMM FREQ   : 2182.0 kHz      │
│ DSC FREQ      : 2187.5 kHz    │
│          GO TO VIEW           │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

12. Press the **CALL** key to send the geographical area call (transmission time: about seven seconds). The display shows "Geographical area message in progress!" while the call is being sent.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│  Geographical area           │
│  message in progress!        │
│                              │
│ AREA: 34°N 140°W ↓10° →5°     │
│ PRIORITY:          SAFETY     │
│ TELEPHONE          2182.0 kHz │
│ DSC FREQ    :      2187.5 kHz │
│ TIME TO GO  :          7S     │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

13. After the call is sent, press the **CANCEL** key twice to show the radiotelephone screen.
14. If you chose TELEPHONE at step 8, you can now communicate with the other party. For NBDP, do the following:

Sending message by NBDP Terminal Unit

The message "STATION ENTRY COMPLETED FROM DSC. Press any key to escape." Appears on the NBDP's display.

1. Press any key on the NBDP Terminal Unit to erase the message.
2. Press the function key **F3** on the keyboard of the NBDP Terminal Unit to show the Operate menu.
3. Choose "Call Station" and then press the **Enter** key.
4. "DSC" is selected; press the **Enter** key. "Connect" appears in reverse video.
5. Type and transmit your message.
6. When you have finished sending your message, press the **F10** key to disconnect the line.

5.3.2 Receiving a geographical area call

The alarm sounds and the display shows "Geographical area message received" when a geographical area message is received.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│  Geographical area           │
│  message received.           │
│   CANCEL: STOP ALARM         │
│                              │
│ PRIORITY:          SAFETY     │
│ TELEPHONE          2182.0kHz  │
│                              │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. "Change COM Frequency" display appears, and the display changes as below.

```
■■■  Received message  ■■■
─────────────────────────────
MAR-23-2006-23:59
GEOGRAPHICAL AREA
SENDER ID :      123456789
PRIORITY:        SAFETY

TELEPHONE:       2182.0 kHz
                            10M10S
─────────────────────────────
          GO TO VIEW
```

3. Press the **CANCEL** key to go to the radiotelephone screen. Watch on the working frequency specified in the geographic area call. If there is the difference between the registered frequency and used frequency to receive, the following screens appear. Choose Agree for the voice communication, or Disagree when you do not change the frequency.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐        Choose "Pause".   ┌─────────────────────────────┐
│   Change COM Frequency      │  ──────────────────────> │   Change COM Frequency      │
│    Agree        Disagree    │                          │    Agree        Disagree    │
│   Count down xx sec.  Pause │                          │   Count down has been paused.│
└─────────────────────────────┘                          └─────────────────────────────┘
          │                                                              │
          ▼                                                              │
After 10 seconds passed or when "Agree" is chosen,                       │
the working frequency is changed with the message                        │   Choose "Agree".
shown below.                                                             │
                                                                         │
┌─────────────────────────────┐                                         │
│   Accept New                │                                         │
│     Working Freq            │  <──────────────────────────────────────┘
│                             │
│     CANCEL: CLOSE WINDOW    │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```
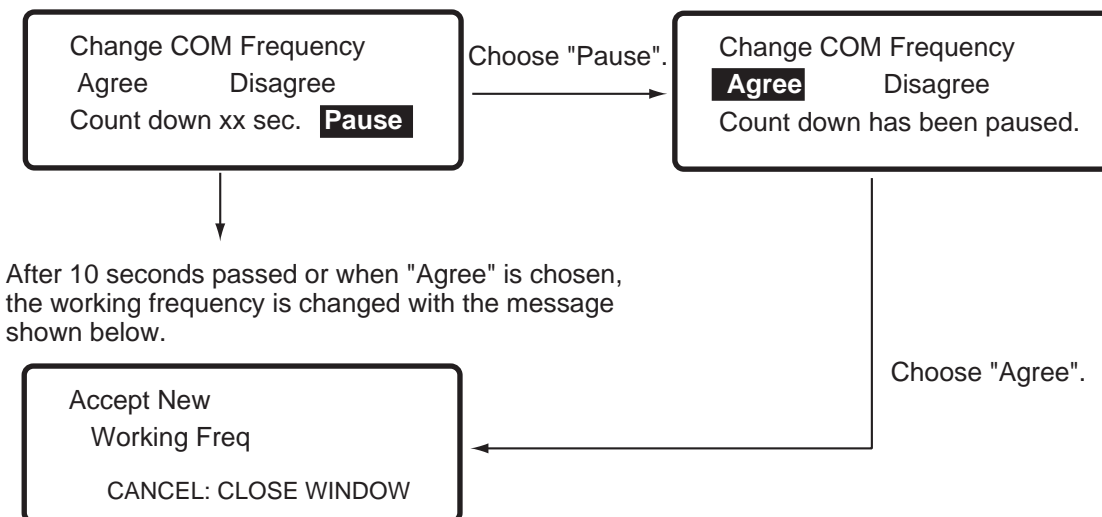
Receiving message by NBDP Terminal Unit

After receiving a geographic area call, confirm the following.

•The control unit's display shows "OCCUPIED" and the Tx and Rx frequencies.
•The message from the sending station appears on your NBDP Terminal Unit.

5.4   Neutral Craft Call

The neutral craft call, which contains own ship position and ID, informs all ships that your ship is not a participant in armed conflict. The neutral craft call is necessary the setting on the Setup menu. See section "6.15 Special Messages".

5.4.1   Sending a neutral craft call

1. Press the **2/DSC** key.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────┐
│ �  Select Message   ▢         │
├──────────────────┬──────────────────┤
│    GENERAL       │    DISTRESS       │
├──────────────────┼──────────────────┤
│ INDIVIDUAL       │ RELAY AREA        │
│ PSTN MESSAGE     │ RELAY COAST       │
│ TEST MESSAGE     │ DISTRESS          │
│ GROUP MESSAGE    │                   │
│ AREA MESSAGE     │                   │
│ POSITION         │ SPECIAL           │
├──────────────────┴──────────────────┤
│ MMSI 123456789                       │
│ POS 12°34.5678N        UTC  01:53    │
│      123°45.6789E      EPFS 01:54    │
└─────────────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose SPECIAL and NEUTRAL in order and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the AREA menu and enter the area range as shown on page 5-16.
4. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COM. MODE menu.
5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose communication type desired (TELEPHONE or NBDP-FEC) and then push the **ENTER** knob.
6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▢    Compos  │ 2187.5 │   ▢         │
│              │ 4207.5 │             │
│ MSG TYPE     │ 6312.0 │             │
│              │ 8414.5 │             │
│ AREA: 44°N 1 │12577.0 │             │
│ PRIORITY     │16804.5 │             │
│ COMM MODE    └────────┘             │
├──────────────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ                     kHz     │
├──────────────────────────────────────┤
│           GO TO VIEW                 │
└─────────────────────────────────────┘
```

7. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▢       Compose msg.      ▢         │
├─────────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE : NEUTRAL                   │
│             CRAFT                    │
│ AREA      : 44°N 140°W↓10°→ 5°       │
│ PRIORITY      : URGENCY              │
│ COMM MODE  : TELEPHONE               │
│ COMM FREQ   : 2182.0 kHz             │
├─────────────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ      : 2187.5 kHz           │
├─────────────────────────────────────┤
│           GO TO VIEW                 │
└─────────────────────────────────────┘
```

8. Press the **CALL** key to send the neutral craft call (transmission time: approx. 7 sec.).

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  ┌──────────────────────┐   │
│  │ Neutral craft        │   │
│  │ message in progress! │   │
│  └──────────────────────┘   │
│                             │
│  AREA    : 34°N 140°W↓10°→ 5°│
│  PRIORITY:       URGENCY     │
│ ─────────────────────────── │
│  DSC FREQ :     2187.5 kHz   │
│ ─────────────────────────── │
│  TIME TO GO:        7S       │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

9. After the call is sent, press the **CANCEL** key twice to show the radiotelephone screen.
10. Inform all ships by radiotelephone that your ship is not a participant in armed conflict.
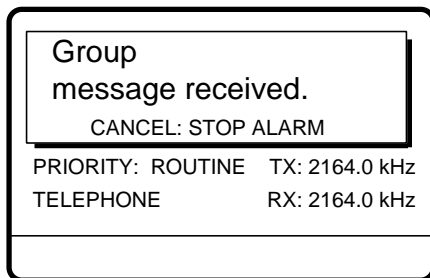
Sending message by NBDP Terminal Unit

The message "STATION ENTRY COMPLETED FROM DSC. Press any key to escape."
Appears on the NBDP's display.

1. Press any key on the NBDP Terminal Unit to erase the message.
2. Press the function key **F3** on the keyboard of the NBDP Terminal Unit to show the Operate menu.
3. Choose "Call Station" and then press the **Enter** key.
4. "DSC" is selected; press the **Enter** key. "Connect" appears in reverse video.
5. Type and transmit your message.
6. When you have finished sending your message, press the **F10** key to disconnect the line.

5.4.2   Receiving a neutral craft call

When a neutral craft call is received the alarm sounds and the display changes as below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  ┌──────────────────────┐   │
│  │ Neutral craft        │   │
│  │ message received.    │   │
│  │ CANCEL: STOP ALARM   │   │
│  └──────────────────────┘   │
│  PRIORITY:      URGENSY     │
│  TELEPHONE     2182.0 kHz   │
│                             │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The working frequency confirmation window appears for 10 seconds. The display changes as below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  ▦▦ Received message ▦▦      │
│  MAR-23-2006-23:59          │
│  NEUTRAL CRAFT              │
│  SENDER ID:     123456789   │
│                             │
│  PRIORITY:      URGENCY     │
│  TELEPHONE      2182.0 kHz  │
│                   10M10S    │
│      GO TO VIEW             │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Press the **CANCEL** key to go to the radiotelephone screen. Watch on the working frequency specified by radiotelephone or NBDP. If there is the difference between the registered frequency and used frequency to receive, the following screens appear. Choose Agree for the voice communication, or Disagree when you do not change the frequency.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐          Choose "Pause".    ┌─────────────────────────────┐
│   Change COM Frequency      │ ────────────────────────→  │   Change COM Frequency      │
│    Agree        Disagree    │                            │    [Agree]      Disagree    │
│   Count down xx sec.  [Pause]│                           │   Count down has been paused.│
└─────────────────────────────┘                            └─────────────────────────────┘
```

After 10 seconds passed or when "Agree" is chosen, the working frequency is changed with the message shown below.

Choose "Agree".

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│    Accept New               │
│      Working Freq           │
│                             │
│     CANCEL: CLOSE WINDOW    │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```
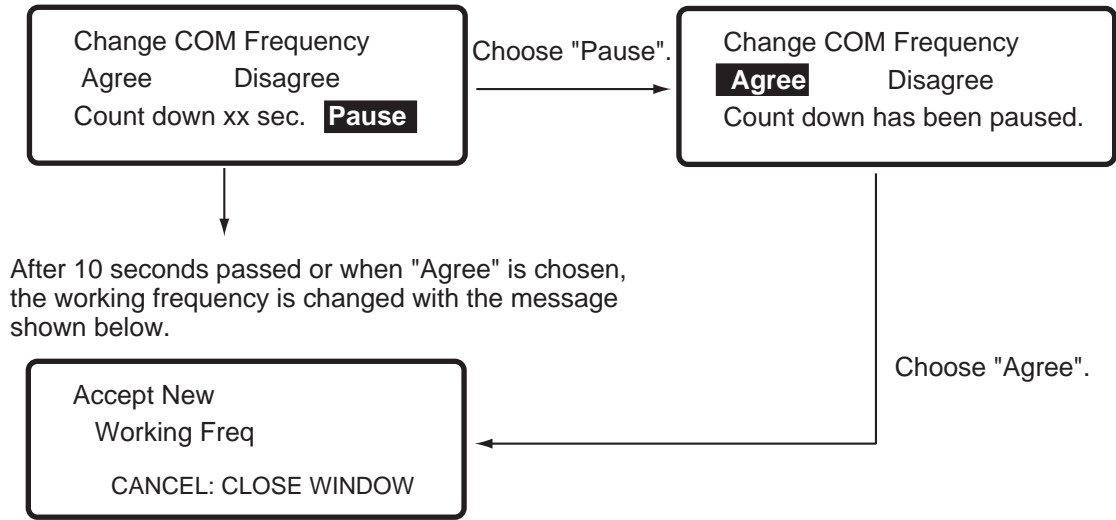
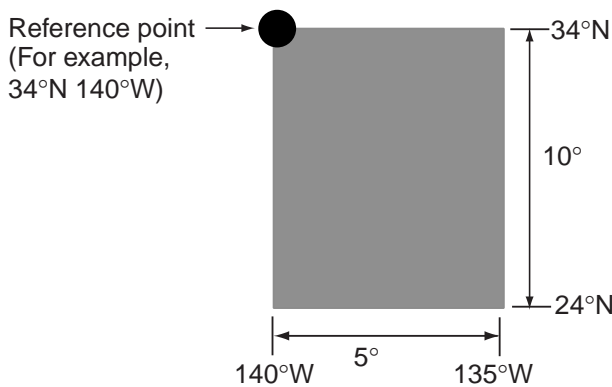### Receiving message by NBDP Terminal Unit

After receiving a neutral craft call, confirm the following.

The control unit's display shows "OCCUPIED" and the Tx and Rx frequencies.

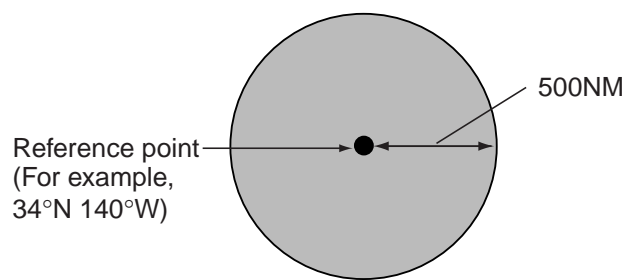The message from the sending station appears on your NBDP Terminal Unit.

5.5 Medical Transport Call

The medical transport call informs all ships, by urgency priority, that own ship carries medical supplies. The medical call is enabled/disable with the Setup menu setting. See section "6.15 Special Messages".

5.5.1 Sending a medical transport call

1. Press the **2/DSC** key.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓     Select Message     ▓▓▓       │
├────────────────────┬─────────────────┤
│    GENERAL         │    DISTRESS     │
├────────────────────┼─────────────────┤
│ [INDIVIDUAL]       │ RELAY AREA      │
│ PSTN MESSAGE       │ RELAY COAST     │
│ TEST MESSAGE       │ DISTRESS        │
│ GROUP MESSAGE      │                 │
│ AREA MESSAGE       │                 │
│ POSITION           │ SPECIAL         │
├────────────────────┴─────────────────┤
│ MMSI 123456789                       │
│ POS 12°34.5678N        UTC  01:53    │
│     123°45.6789E       EPFS 01:54    │
└──────────────────────────────────────┘
```
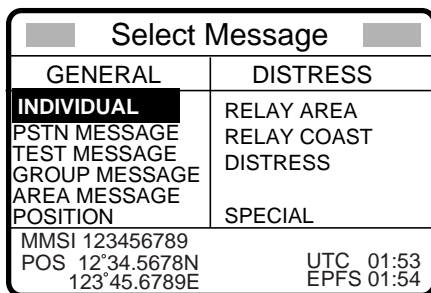
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose SPECIAL and MEDICAL in order and then push the **ENTER** knob. PRIORITY is automatically selected to URGENCY.

5-21

3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the AREA menu and then enter the area range as shown on page 5-17.
4. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COMM MODE menu.
5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose communication type desired (TELEPHONE or NBDP-FEC) and then push the **ENTER** knob.
6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ▭      Compose msg.     ▭   │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│                 ┌─────────┐  │
│ MSG TYPE        │ 2187.5  │  │
│                 │ 4207.5  │  │
│ AREA: 44°N      │ 6312.0  │  │
│ PRIORITY        │ 8414.5  │  │
│ COMM MODE12577.0│         │  │
│ DSC FREQ  16804.5│   kHz  │  │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│         GO TO VIEW          │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

7. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob. The display changes as below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ▭      Compose msg.     ▭   │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE      : MEDICAL     │
│                 TRANSPORT   │
│ AREA :44°N 125°E ↓17°→21°   │
│ PRIORITY      : URGENCY     │
│ COMM MODE  : TELEPHONE      │
│ COMM FREQ  : 2182.0 kHz     │
│ DSC FREQ    :   2187.5 KHZ  │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│        GO TO VIEW           │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```
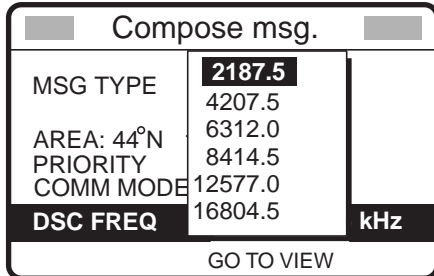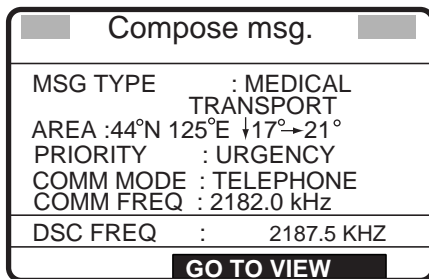
8. Press the **CALL** key to send the call (transmission time: about seven seconds). The display shows "Medical transport message in progress!" while the call is being sent.
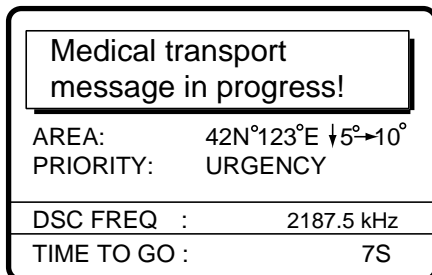
```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ┌─────────────────────────┐ │
│ │ Medical transport       │ │
│ │ message in progress!    │ │
│ └─────────────────────────┘ │
│ AREA:        42N°123°E ↓5°→10°│
│ PRIORITY:    URGENCY        │
│                             │
│ DSC FREQ   :    2187.5 kHz  │
│ TIME TO GO :         7S     │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

9. After the call is sent, press the **CANCEL** key twice to show the radiotelephone screen.
10. Inform all ships (by radiotelephone) that your ship is transporting medical supplies. For NBDP do the following:

Sending message by NBDP Terminal Unit

The message "STATION ENTRY COMPLETED FROM DSC. Press any key to escape." Appears on the NBDP's display.

1. Press any key on the NBDP Terminal Unit to erase the message.
2. Press the function key **F3** on the keyboard of the NBDP Terminal Unit to show the Operate menu.
3. Choose "Call Station" and then press the Enter key.
4. "DSC" is selected; press the Enter key. "Connect" appears in reverse video.
5. Type and transmit your message.

5-22

6. When you have finished sending your message, press the F10 key to disconnect the line.

5.5.2 Receiving a medical transport call

When a medical transport call is received, the alarm sounds and the display changes as below.

```
Medical transport
message received.
    CANCEL: STOP ALARM
PRIORITY:        URGENCY
TELEPHONE     2182.0 KHZ
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. After the "Change COM Frequency" display, the display changes as below.

```
        Received message
MAR-23-2006-23:59
MEDICAL TRANSPORT
SENDER ID:        123456789
PRIORITY:          URGENCY
TELEPHONE       2182.0 kHz
                      10M10S
           GO TO VIEW
```
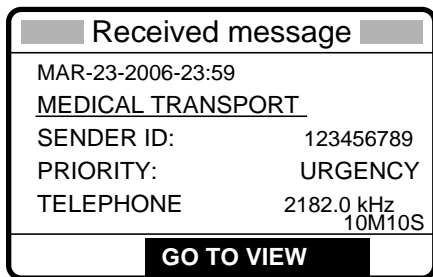
2. Press the **CANCEL** key to go to the radiotelephone screen to watch on frequency specified. If there is the difference between the registered frequency and used frequency to receive, the following screens appear. Choose Agree for the voice communication, or Disagree when you do not change the frequency.

```
Change COM Frequency
  Agree       Disagree
Count down xx sec.  Pause
```
Choose "Pause".
```
Change COM Frequency
  Agree       Disagree
Count down has been paused.
```

After 10 seconds passed or when "Agree" is chosen, the working frequency is changed with the message shown below.

Choose "Agree".

```
Accept New
   Working Freq

   CANCEL: CLOSE WINDOW
```
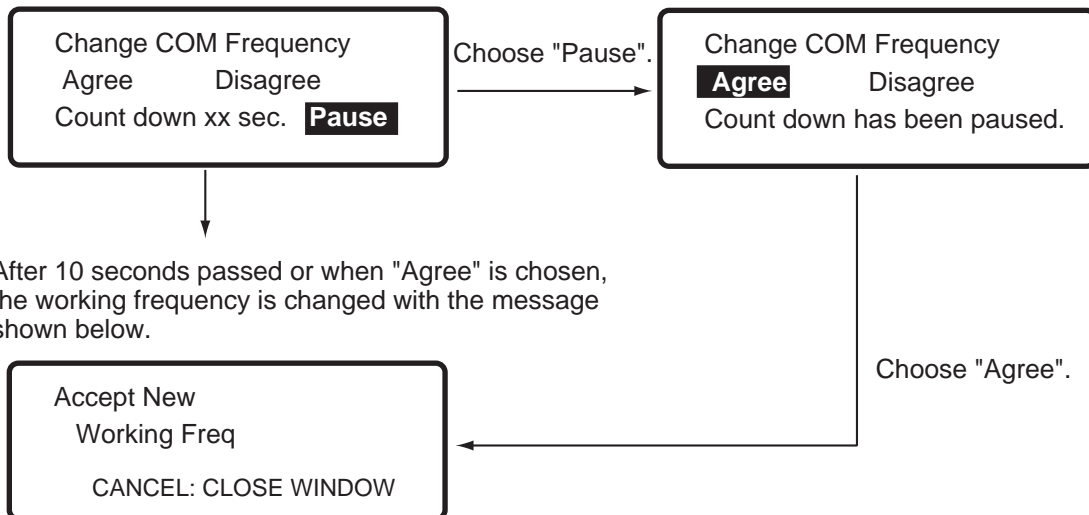
Receiving message by NBDP Terminal Unit

After receiving a medical transport area call, confirm the following.

The control unit's display shows "OCCUPIED" and the Tx and Rx frequencies.

The message from the sending station appears on your NBDP Terminal Unit.

5.6 Receiving a Polling Request

Polling means confirming if own station is within communicating range with other station.
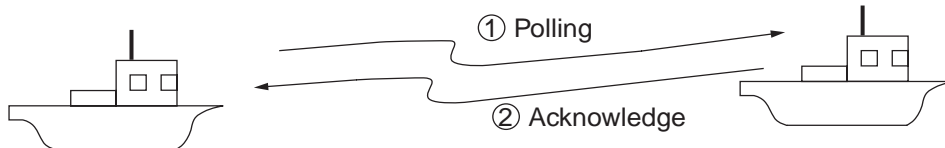
5.6.1 Automatic reply

The display changes as shown in the illustration below when a polling request message is received

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ┌─────────────────────────┐ │
│ │  Polling acknowledge    │ │
│ │  message in progress!   │ │
│ └─────────────────────────┘ │
│                             │
│ DESTINATION ID :   123456789│
│ PRIORITY:          ROUTINE  │
│                             │
│ DSC FREQ   :    2177.0 kHz  │
│ TIME TO GO :         7S     │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

The equipment is set up for automatic acknowledge: POLLING MESSAGE on the Auto Ack menu is ON and the **5/ACK/ SQ** key is set to show AUTO ACK on the display. For details see paragraph 6.11. (PRIORITY: ROUTINE only) After the polling acknowledge message is transmitted, the following display appears and the audio alarm sounds.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ┌─────────────────────────┐ │
│ │  Polling acknowledge    │ │
│ │  message transmitted.   │ │
│ │   CANCEL: STOP ALARM    │ │
│ └─────────────────────────┘ │
│   PRIORITY:      ROUTINE    │
│                             │
│                             │
│                             │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The display changes as below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓  Xmitted message  ▓▓▓  │
│ MAR-23-2006-23:00:09        │
│ POLLING  ACKNOWLEDGE        │
│ DESTINATION ID :  123456789 │
│ PRIORITY:        ROUTINE    │
│                             │
│                 10M10S      │
│    RESEND     [GO TO VIEW]  │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Press the **CANCEL** key to return to the radiotelephone screen.

5.6.3 Manual reply

The display changes as shown in the illustration below. The audio alarm sounds when a polling request message is received and the status of the **5/ ACK/SQ** key is MANUAL ACK (or AUTO ACK and POLLING MESSAGE in AUTO ACK menu is OFF).

```
 Polling request
 message received.
    CNCEL: STOP ALARM
PRIORITY:          ROUTINE


```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The display changes as below.
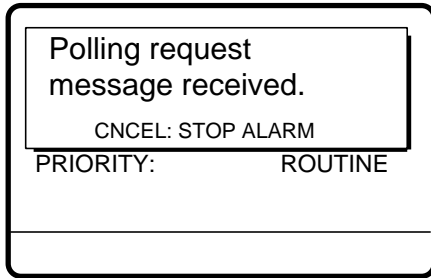
```
▨  Received message  ▨
MAR-23-2006-23:01
POLLING  REQUEST
SENDER ID :    987654321
PRIORITY:      ROUTINE
                  10M10S
   ANSWER    GOTO  VIEW
```

2. To ignore the call, press the **CANCEL** key.
3. To respond to the call, rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ANSWER and then push the **ENTER** knob. The display changes as below.

```
▨     Compose msg     ▨

MSG TYPE   : POLLING
          ACKNOWLEDGEMENT
STATION ID      : 987654321
PRIORITY        : ROUTINE
DSC FREQ      : 2M-INTL
       GO TO VIEW
```
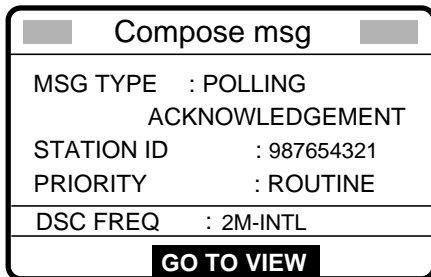
4. Press the **CALL** key to send the polling acknowledge message. The display changes as below.

```
 Polling acknowledge
 message in progress!

DESTINATION ID :   987654321
PRIORITY :          ROUTINE

DSC FREQ  :         2177.0 kHz
TIME TO GO:              7S
```

→

```
 Polling acknowledge
 message transmitted.
   PLEASE PUSH CANCEL KEY.
```

CANCEL key (twice)

↓

Radiotelephone screen
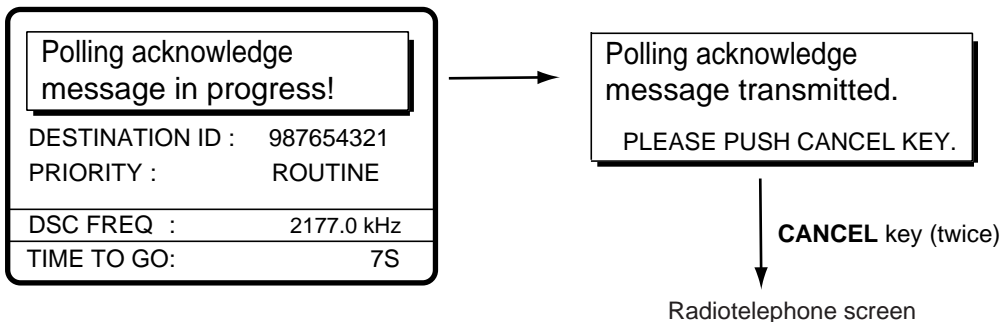
5.7   Position Call

There are two types of position calls: other station requires your ship's position and your ship requests position of another ship.

Finding position of other station
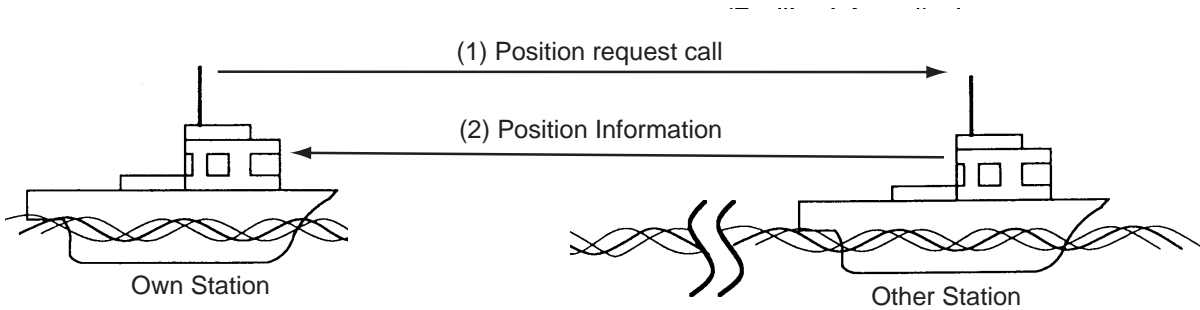
Sending own ship's position to other station
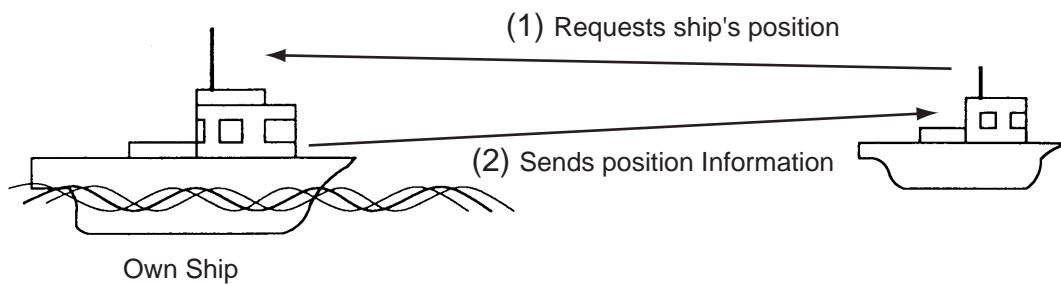
5.7.1   Requesting other ship's position

1. Press the **2/DSC** key.

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose POSITION and then push the **ENTER** knob.

3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the STATION ID menu, and then rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MANUAL or SELECT. **For SELECT,** you can choose an ID from the message file list stored. **For MANUAL,** key in ID of station (nine digits) which you want to know its position and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│  ▆▆      Compose msg.    ▆▆      │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  MSG TYPE:   POSITION            │
│              REQUEST             │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  STATION ID      |*|*********    │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  PRIORITY     : SAFETY           │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  DSC FREQ     : 2187.5 kHz       │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│            GO TO VIEW            │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```
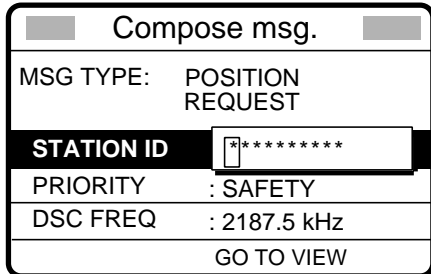
4. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu, and then rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate frequency.
5. Push the **ENTER** knob. The display now looks something like the illustration below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│  ▆▆      Compose msg.    ▆▆      │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  MSG TYPE   : POSITION           │
│               REQUEST            │
│                                  │
│  STATION ID    :    123456789    │
│  PRIORITY      :    SAFETY       │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  DSC FREQ     : 2187.5 kHz       │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│            GO TO VIEW            │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```
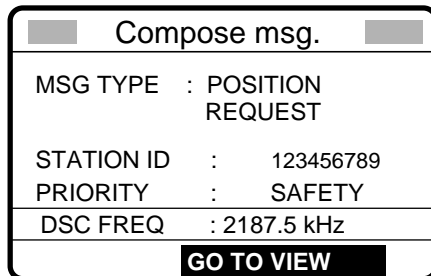
6. Press the **CALL** key to send the message (transmission time: about seven seconds). The following display appears.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│  Position request                │
│  message in progress!            │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  DESTINATION ID :   123456789    │
│  PRIORITY:          SAFETY       │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  DSC FREQ  :        2187.5 kHz   │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  TIME TO GO:            7S        │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```
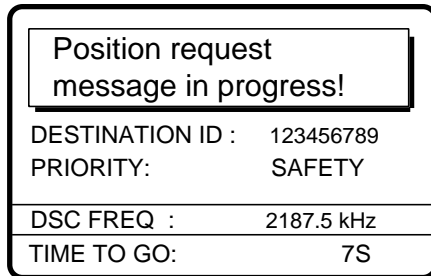
After the call has been sent, the following display appears.
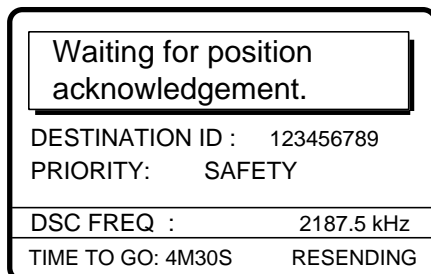
```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│  Waiting for position            │
│  acknowledgement.                │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  DESTINATION ID :   123456789    │
│  PRIORITY:     SAFETY            │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  DSC FREQ  :        2187.5 kHz   │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│  TIME TO GO: 4M30S    RESENDING  │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

One of the following messages appears. "No response! Try calling again?" appears after the time has counted down to zero, meaning there was no response from the party called.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ Position acknowledge        │
│ messsage received.          │
│      CANCEL: STOP ALARM     │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ PRIORITY:        SAFETY     │
│ POS :    12 34.0000N        │
│        123 45.0000E   AT 12:34 │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ No response!                │
│ Try calling again?          │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DESTINATION ID:   123456789 │
│ PRIORITY:         SAFETY    │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ  :      2187.5 KHZ │
│              [ RESEND ]     │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

Position acknowledge message received   No response

7. Do one of the following depending on the message displayed at step 6.

Acknowledge message received

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The display looks as below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ �  Received message ▒▒    │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ MAR-23-2006-23:59           │
│ POSITION  ACKNOWLEDGE       │
│ SENDER ID :        123456789│
│ PRIORITY:          SAFETY   │
│ POS :  12 34N               │
│       123 45E    AT 12:34 10M10S │
│          [ GO TO VIEW ]     │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

2. You can now confirm position of other ship.

No response! Try calling again?

Re-send call: Push the **ENTER** knob followed by the **CALL** key.
Cancel call: Press the **CANCEL** key.

5.7.2   Position call: other ship requests your position

You may turn automatic acknowledge of position request on with "POSITION MESSAGE: On" on the Auto Ack menu. For further details, see section 6.11.

Automatic reply

When another ship requests your position and the status of the **5/ ACK/SQ** key is AUTO ACK and the setting of POSITION MESSAGE on the Auto ack menu is ON, the equipment transmits own position data (transmission time: approx. 7 sec.), showing the display below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ Position acknowledge        │
│ message in progress!        │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DESTINATION ID :  123456789 │
│ PRIORITY:        SAFETY     │
│ POS:  35°30N                │
│      135°30E      AT 23:54  │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ   :     2187.5 kHz │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ TIME TO GO :        7S      │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

After the call is sent the audio alarm sounds and the display below appears.

```
Position acknowledge
message transmitted.
    CANCEL: STOP ALARM
PRIORITY: SAFETY
POS:  35°30N
      135°30E        AT 23:54
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm, and the display changes as below.

```
▓▓▓▓ Xmitted message ▓▓▓▓
MAR-23-2006-23:59:09
POSITION  ACKNOWLEDGE
DESTINATION ID :   987654321
PRIORITY:  SAFETY
POS : 35°00N
      135°00E      AT 23:59  10M10S
        RESEND    GO TO VIEW
```
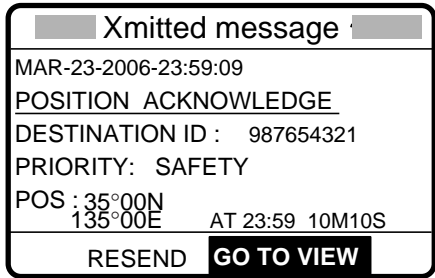
2. Press the **CANCEL** key to return to the radiotelephone screen.

Manual reply

When a position request message is received and the status of the **5/ ACK/SQ** key is MANUAL ACK (or AUTO ACK and POSITION MESSAGE on AUTO ACK menu is OFF), the audio alarm sounds and the display changes as below.

```
Position request
message received.
   CANCEL: STOP ALARM
PRIORITY:      SAFETY
```

1. Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The display changes as below.
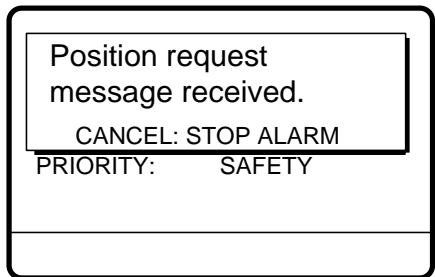
```
▓▓ Received message ▓▓
MAR-23-2006-23:00:01
POSITION  REQUEST
SENDER ID :        123456789
PRIORITY:          SAFETY
                   10M10S
      ANSWER  GO TO VIEW
```

2. If canceling to send the reply, press the **CANCEL** key.

3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ANSWER and then push the **ENTER** knob. Your display should now look something like the one below.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│  ▭▭     Compose msg.     ▭▭       │
├──────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE:   POSITION             │
│             ACKNOWLEDGEMENT       │
│ POS:        35°00 N               │
│             135°00 E    AT 23:01  │
│                                   │
│ DSC FREQ  :        2187.5 kHz     │
│            GO TO VIEW             │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```

4. Confirm the position shown and then press the **CALL** to send the position data (transmission time: approx. 7 sec.). The display changes as below.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│ Position acknowledge             │
│ message in progress!             │
│                                   │
│ DESTINATION ID :  123456789      │
│ PRIORITY:           SAFETY        │
│ POS:   35 00N                     │
│        135 00E AT 23:01           │
│ DSC FREQ   :        2187.5 kHz    │
│ TIME TO GO:              7S        │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```

→

```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│ Position acknowledge             │
│ messsage transmitted.            │
│     PLEASE PUSH CANCEL KEY        │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```

Press the **CANCEL** key twice.

↓

Radiotelephone screen
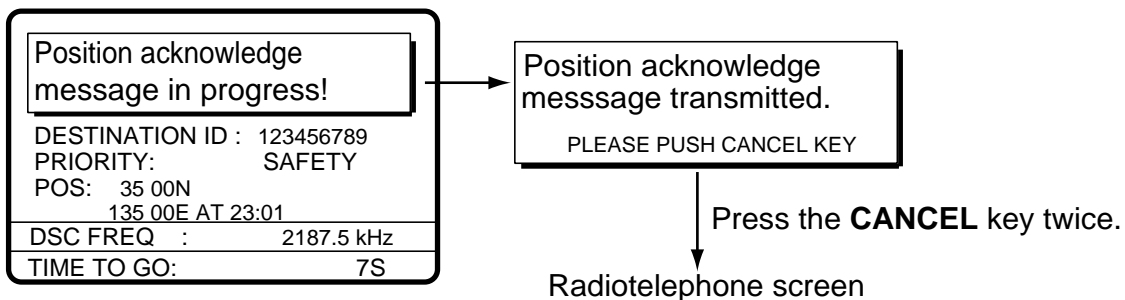
5.8   PSTN Call

The PSTN call allows the making and receiving of telephone calls over public switched telephone networks. To use the PSTN call feature, use a handset which has a HOOK ON/OFF function. The standard supply handset has this feature.

5.8.1   Sending a PSTN call, receiving acknowledge back (ACK BQ)

1. Press the **2/DSC** key.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────┐
│  ▭▭     Select Message     ▭▭     │
├──────────────────┬───────────────┤
│ GENERAL          │ DISTRESS      │
├──────────────────┼───────────────┤
│ INDIVIDUAL       │ RELAY AREA    │
│ PSTN MESSAGE     │ RELAY COAST   │
│ TEST MESSAGE     │ DISTRESS      │
│ GROUP MESSAGE    │               │
│ AREA MESSAGE     │               │
│ POSITION         │ SPECIAL       │
├──────────────────┴───────────────┤
│ MMSI I23456789                    │
│ POS  12 34.5678N     UTC 01:53    │
│      123 45.6789E    MAN 01:54    │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose PSTN MESSAGE and then push the **ENTER** knob.

3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COAST ID menu, and then rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MANUAL or SELECT. **For SELECT,** you can choose an ID from the message file list stored. **For MANUAL,** key in ID of coast station (seven digits) with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▭    Compose msg.    ▭          │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE:     PSTN MESSAGE      │
│ ▐COAST ID▌  **|*******          │
│ TEL NO. :                       │
│ COMM MODE:  TELEPHONE           │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ     :12M-INTL          │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│            GO TO VIEW           │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

4. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the TEL NO. menu.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▭    Compose msg.    ▭          │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE:     PSTN MESSAGE      │
│ COAST ID     : 001234567        │
│ ▐TEL NO.▌  |----------------    │
│ COMM MODE                       │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ     :12M-INTL          │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│            GO TO VIEW           │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```
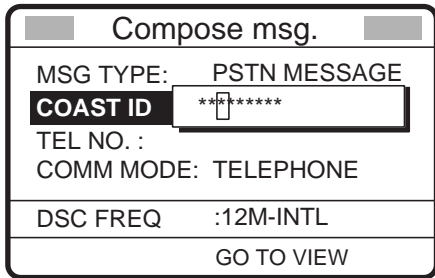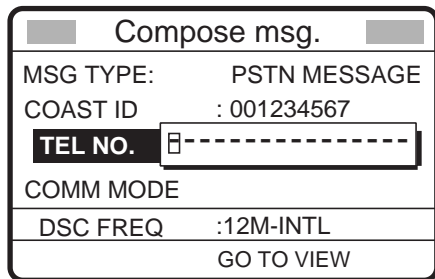
5. Enter telephone no. (up to 16 digits) with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.
6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COMM MODE menu, and then choose the communication mode.
7. Push the **ENTER** knob.
8. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

Rotate **ENTER** knob to scroll.

```
┌───────────────────────────┐
│ ▭   Compose msg.   ▭      │       ▲
│ MSG TYPE  │2 MHz│ LL       │    16 MHz
│ COAST ID   4 MHz           │    18 MHz
│ TEL NO.    6 MHz   9       │    22 MHz
│ COMM MODE  8 MHz  9012345  │    25 MHz
│           12 MHz           │
│ ▐DSC FREQ▌  ▼              │
│           GO TO VIEW       │
└───────────────────────────┘
```

9. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DSC band desired and then push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.
10. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DSC frequency desired and then push the **ENTER** knob. The display changes as below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▭    Compose msg.    ▭          │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE  : PSTN MESSAGE        │
│ COAST   ID : 001234567          │
│ TEL NO.   : 1234567890123456    │
│ COMM MODE : TELEPHONE           │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ  :      12M-INTL       │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│           ▐GO TO VIEW▌          │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

5-31
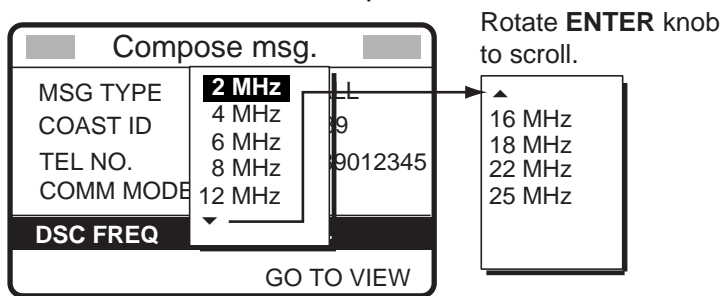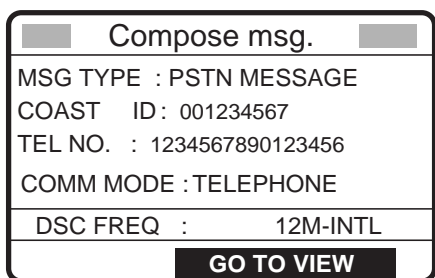
11. Press the CALL key to send the PSTN call (transmission time: about seven seconds). The display shows the following message.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  PSTN request               │
│  message in progress!       │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DESTINATION ID  : 001234567 │
│ TEL NO.      : 1234567890123456 │
│                             │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ  :      12577.5 kHz │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ TIME TO GO:          7S     │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

One of the following three displays appears. ("No response! Try calling again?" appears after timer counts down to zero and it means there was no response from the coast station.)

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ Waiting for                 │
│ acknowledgement.            │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DESTINATION ID :  001234567 │
│ TEL NO.   : 1234567890123456 │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ  :    12577.5 kHz  │
│ TIME TO GO: 25S    RESENDING │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ Unable acknowledge          │
│ message received.           │
│  CANCEL: STOP ALARM         │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ SENDER ID :     001234567   │
│ TEL NO.   : 1234567890123456 │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ No response!                │
│ Try calling again?          │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DESTINATION ID :  001234567 │
│ TEL NO.    : 1234567890123456 │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ    :  12577.5 kHz  │
│                    RESEND   │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

12. Do one of the following depending on the message shown in step 11.

Waiting for acknowledgement

If the PSTN call is accepted, the PSTN connection call is sent (transmission time: about seven seconds), showing the display below.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  PSTN connection            │
│  message in progress!       │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DESTINATION ID   :  001234567 │
│ TEL NO.   : 1234567890123456 │
│ TELEPHONE: 2222.2kHz        │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ  :     12577.5 KHZ │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ TIME TO GO:         7S      │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

After the call is sent the following messages appears.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ Waiting for                 │
│ acknowledgement.            │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│  SENDER ID :     001234567  │
│  TEL NO.   : 1234567890123456 │
│  TELEPHONE: 2222.2kHz       │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ  :     12577.5 KHZ │
│ TIME TO GO: 25S    RESENDING │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

Then, one of the following displays appears.

```
┌─────────────────────────┐
│ PSTN connected.         │
│                         │
├─────────────────────────┤
│ DESTINATION  : 001234567 │
│ TEL NO.     : 1234567890123456 │
│ TELEPHONE: 2222.2kHz    │
├─────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ :      12577.5 KHZ │
└─────────────────────────┘
```

```
┌─────────────────────────┐
│ PSTN end of             │
│ message in progress!    │
├─────────────────────────┤
│ DESTINATION : 001234567 │
│ TEL NO.    : 1234567890123456 │
├─────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ  :     12577.5 KHZ │
│ TIME TO GO:          8S │
└─────────────────────────┘
```

PSTN call connected   PSTN end of call

13. Follow the instructions below depending on the message shown in 3) above.
    PSTN connected: Your phone rings; pick up the handset and communicate with the party you called.
    PSTN end of message in progress: The channel could not be used. Press the **CANCEL** key to return to the DSC standby screen.

Unable acknowledge message received

1. The audio alarm sounds; press the **CANCEL** key or **ENTER** knob to silence the alarm. The display shown below appears.

```
┌─────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓  Received message  ▓▓ │
├─────────────────────────┤
│ MAR-23-2006-23:01       │
│ UNABLE ACKNOWLEDGE      │
│ BUSY                    │
│ SENDER ID :    001234567 │
│ TEL NO.    : 1234567890123456 │
│                   10M10S │
├─────────────────────────┤
│        GO TO VIEW       │
└─────────────────────────┘
```

2. Press the **CANCEL** key to return to the DSC standby screen.
3. Try the call again later.

No response! Try calling again?

Re-send call: Push the **ENTER** knob followed by the **CALL** key.
Cancel call: Press the **CANCEL** key to return to the radiotelephone screen.

5.8.2   Receiving a PSTN call, sending acknowledge back (ACK BQ)

The following display appears when a PSTN call is received when automatic acknowledge is turned on.

```
┌─────────────────────────┐
│ Able acknowledge        │
│ message in progress!    │
├─────────────────────────┤
│ DESTINATION ID : 001234567 │
│ TEL NO.    : 1234567890123456 │
│                         │
├─────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ  :     4208.0 KHZ │
│ TIME TO GO:          8S │
└─────────────────────────┘
```

The timer counts down to zero and then the following display appears.

```
Pick up the handset
or press CALL key.
DESTINATION ID : 001234567
TEL NO.    : 1234567890123456
TELEPHONE: 2222.2kHz
DSC FREQ  :         4208.0 KHZ
TIME TO GO: 60S    RESENDING
```

1. Pick up the handset or press the **CALL** key within one minute.

```
PSTN connection
message in progress!
DESTINATION ID : 001234567
TEL NO.    : 1234567890123456
TELEPHONE: 2222.2kHz
DSC FREQ  :        4208.0 KHZ
TIME TO GO:             7S
```

The timer counts down to zero and then the following display appears.

```
Waiting for
acknowledgement.
SENDER ID :      001234567
TEL NO.    : 1234567890123456
TELEPHONE: 2222.2kHz
DSC FREQ  :        2222.2 KHZ
TIME TO GO: 25S    RESENDING
```

Shortly thereafter, one of the following messages appears.

```
PSTN connected.

DESTINATION ID  :  001234567
TEL NO.     : 1234567890123456
TELEPHONE   :    2222.2 kHz
DSC FREQ  :         4208.0KHZ
```

PSTN call connected

```
PSTN end of
message in progress!
DESTINATION ID :  001234567
TEL NO.    :  1234567890123456
DSC FREQ  :         4208.0KHZ
TIME TO GO:             7S
```

PSTN end of call

2. Do one of the following depending on the message shown at step 5. Note that volume can be adjusted in this condition. Rotate the **PWR/VOL** knob.

    PSTN connected: Communicate with party.
    PSTN end of message in progress!: The channel could not be used. Press the **CANCEL** key to return to the DSC standby screen.

5.8.3 PSTN call disconnection, receiving charge information (ship disconnects line)

1. After hanging up the handset or pressing the **CANCEL** key to complete your call, the display shows the following message.

```
PSTN end of
 message in progress!
DESTINATION ID :  001234567
TEL NO.      : 1234567890123456

DSC FREQ  :         12577.5 KHZ
TIME TO GO:              8S
```

After the call is sent, the following messages appears.

```
Waiting for
 charge information.
DESTINATION ID :001234567
TEL NO.      : 1234567890123456

DSC FREQ  :         12577.5 KHZ
TIME TO GO: 20S     RESENDING
```

When the timer counts down to zero one of the following displays appear.

```
Charge information
message received.

 CANCEL: STOP ALARM
TEL NO.      : 1234567890123456
```

```
No response!
 charge information.
DESTINATION ID :001234567
TEL NO.        : 1234567890123456

DSC FREQ:        xxxx.xkHz
```

For **"No response! Charge information."**, the equipment reverts to step 2 in this procedure to await charge information.

2. **For "Charge information message received.",** the audio alarm sounds; press the **CANCEL** key or **ENTER** knob to silence the audio alarm. The display shown below appears.

```
▓▓ Received message ▓▓
MAR-23-2006-23:59
CHARGE INFORMATION
CHARGE TIME :    00H 12M 34S
SENDER ID :       001234567
TEL NO.      : 1234567890123456
                        10M10S
        GO TO VIEW
```

5.8.4 PSTN call disconnection, receiving charge information (coast station disconnects line)

The PSTN line is disconnected by the coast station when it finds no evidence of communications or the land subscriber hangs up. The coast station then sends charge information as below.

```
▣▣ Received message ▣▣
MAR-23-2006-23:59
CHARGE INFORMATION
CHARGE TIME : 00H 12M 34S
SENDER ID :    001234567
TEL NO.     : 1234567890123456
                         10M10S
         GO TO VIEW
```
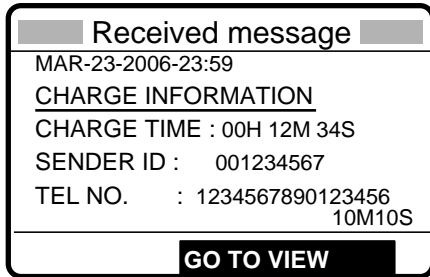
For no charge information the display looks as below.

```
▣▣ Received message ▣▣
MAR-23-2006-23:59
CHARGE INFORMATION
CHARGE TIME : NO INFO
SENDER ID :    001234567
TEL NO.        1234567890123456
                         10M10S
         GO TO VIEW
```
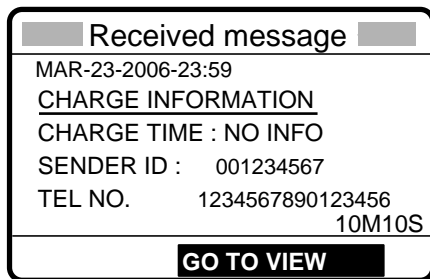
5.9 Log File

Three log files are provided for storage of calls: received ordinary log, received distress log and transmitted log. Each log file stores 50 calls. The latest call is saved as log no.1 and the log no. of all previous calls in that log increments by one. When the storage capacity is exceeded, the oldest call is deleted to make room for the latest. An asterisk (*) marks unread or unacknowledged calls. Received distress calls are automatically deleted 48 hours after being read.

5.9.1 Opening a log file

The procedure for opening a log is common to all logs. The example below shows how to open the received distress log.

1. Press the **LOG/TUNE** key momentary to open the Log file menu.

```
WATC                          CK
DISTR   Select log file
  218  ☑RECEIVED ORDINARY   0
 1680    RECEIVED DISTRESS   5
ROUT     TRANSMITTED
  217                        0
 16903.0   12657.0    8436.5
  35°00.000N           MANUAL
135°00.000E   23:59
```
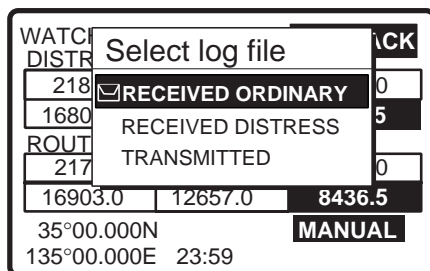
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose desired log and push the **ENTER** knob. For example, choose the RECEIVED DISTRESS log and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to scroll the log. Asterisk indicates unread message.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐          ┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓▓  Rcvd distress log ▓▓▓▓ │          │ ▓▓▓▓  Rcvd distress log ▓▓▓▓ │
│ 01.APR-10-19:58  DISTRESS   │          │ 45.MAR-01-23:45  *DISTRESS  │
│ 02.APR-10-19:56  DISTRESS   │          │ 46.FEB-28-19:56  *DISTRESS  │
│ 03.APR-10-13:45  *DISTRESS  │  ◄─────► │ 47.FEB-28-19:48  *DISTRESS  │
│ 04.APR-10-11:52  DISTRESS   │          │ 48.FEB-28-19:44  *DISTRESS  │
│ 05.APR-10-11:43  DISTRESS   │          │ 49.FEB-21-12:36  *DISTRESS  │
│ 06.MAR-22-21:18  DISTRESS   │          │ 50.FEB-17-12:34  *DISTRESS  │
│          ▼OLD               │          │          ▲ NEW              │
└─────────────────────────────┘          └─────────────────────────────┘
```

Scroll with the **ENTER** knob.
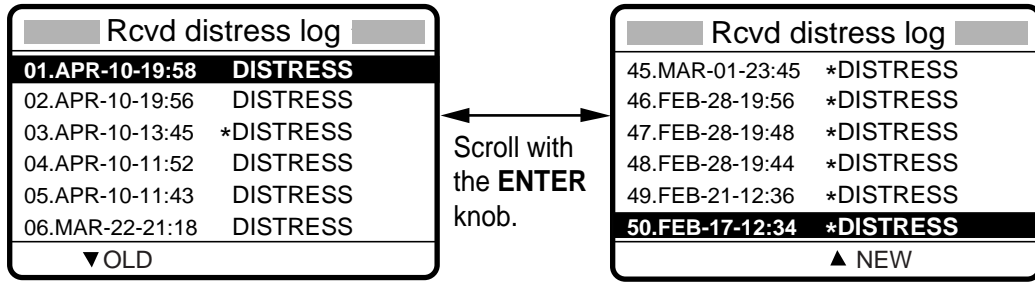
4. **To view the contents of a file, do the following:**

   a) Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose the file desired and then push the **ENTER** knob.

   ```
   ┌──────────┐
   │ DETAIL   │
   │ DELETE   │
   └──────────┘
   ```

   b) DETAIL is selected; push the **ENTER** knob.

   ```
   ┌─────────────────────────────┐
   │ ▓▓▓  Received message  ▓▓▓  │
   │ FEB-17-2006-12:34:56        │
   │ DISTRESS ALERT              │
   │ SHIP ID IN DIST : 987654321 │
   │ NATURE : UNDESIGNATED       │
   │ POS : 12 34.0000N  DIST: 43nm│
   │     123 45.0000E   AT 12:34 │
   │ TELEPHONE       2182.0 KHZ  │
   │                      10M10S │
   │ NEXT ANSWER  GO TO VIEW  PREV│
   └─────────────────────────────┘
   ```

5. **To scroll the log up and down,** use the **FILE/CURSOR** and **#/SETUP** keys, respectively. Use **FILE/CURSOR** key to scroll forward; the **#/SETUP** to scroll backward.
6. **To print all files in the log selected,** press the **8/PRINT** key.
7. **To reply to an unanswered call,** rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ANSWER, press the **ENTER** knob, and then press the **CALL** key.
8. **To return to the log selected,** press the **CANCEL** key.

5.9.2 Deleting log files

1. Do steps 1-3 and 4a) in the previous procedure to choose the file you wish to delete.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DELETE and then press the **ENTER** knob.

The log files are renumbered to reflect the deletion.

This page is intentionally left blank.

6. MENU OPERATION

The menu, consisting of main menus, provides access to less-often used function. It can be accessed from both the RT and DSC screens.

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key to show the main menu.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  ▬▬▬   MENU    ▬▬▬           │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ HS. VOL 32  │  DATE/TIME     │
│ NB    ON    │  MEM CLR       │
│ SQ  2000Hz  │  USR SETUP     │
│ USER  CH    │  SYS SETUP     │
│ MESSAGE     │                │
│ POSITION    │                │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```
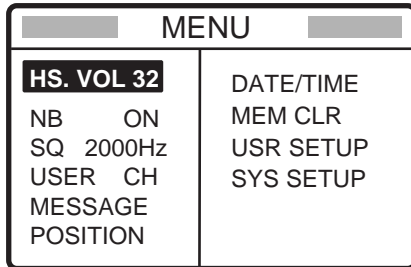
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USR SETUP, and press the **ENTER** knob to show the Setup menu.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│  ▬▬▬   Setup    ▬▬▬          │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ ALARM      │  KEY ASSIGN     │
│ SOUND      │  SPECIAL MSG    │
│ AUTO ACK   │  FAX Rx DIS     │
│ PRINT OUT  │  HOOK SP OFF    │
│ SCAN FREQ  │  TIMER 10MIN    │
│            │                 │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```
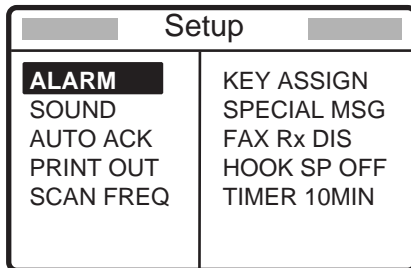
6.1   Adjusting Handset Volume

Adjust handset volume from the HANDSET VOLUME window as follows:

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Choose HS. VOL and then push the **ENTER** knob to display the HANDSET VOLUME window.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to adjust volume, and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│ HANDSET                      │
│ VOLUME (0~63)                │
│ ◀ ████████████████  ▶ 63     │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```
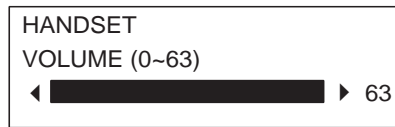
4. Press the **CANCEL** key.

6.2 Noise Blanker

The noise blanker functions to remove pulse noise. You may turn it on or off as follows. Normally, use it with OFF (default setting).

1. Press the **SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose NB.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Rotate the ENTER knob to choose ON or OFF as appropriate, and then push the **ENTE**R knob.
5. Press the **CANCEL** key.

"NB" appears in the equipment states area when choosing ON at step 4.

6.3 Squelch Frequency

If you change the squelch frequency (ex. For high voice), do the following procedure. (default setting: 800Hz)

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose SQ.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Enter frequency (range: 500-2000 Hz) with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.
5. Press the **CANCEL** key.

6.4 User Channels

The USER CH menu allows registration and deleting of user TX and RX channels, where permitted by the Authorities. Maximum 256 channels can be registered.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│            NOTICE               │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ FURUNO will assume no responsibility │
│ for the disturbance caused by the │
│ unlawful or improper setting of user │
│ channels.                       │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

6.4.1 Registering user channels

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USER CH and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓▓ User ch entry ▓▓▓▓       │
│ ◀ MODE:  SSB    ▶ CH:   2-01  │
│ ▌00201.  TX: 2111.5  RX: 2111.5▐│
│  00202.  TX: 2222.0  RX: 2222.0 │
│  00203.  TX: 2333.5  RX: 2333.5 │
│  00204.  TX: 2444.0  RX: 2444.0 │
│  00205.  TX: 2555.5  RX: 2555.5 │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the user channel options window.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│  ▓▓▓▓▓ User ch entry ▓▓▓▓▓    │
│ ◄ MODE: SSB       ▶ CH:   2-01│
│ ┌────────────────────────────┐│
│ │00201. TX: 2111.5  RX: 2111.5││
│ │00202. ┌────────┐ RX: 2222.0 ││
│ │00203. │ MODE   │ RX: 2333.5 ││
│ │       │ CH     │            ││
│ │00204. │ FREQ   │ RX: 2444.0 ││
│ │00205. TX: 2555.5  RX: 2555.5││
│ └────────────────────────────┘│
└──────────────────────────────┘
```
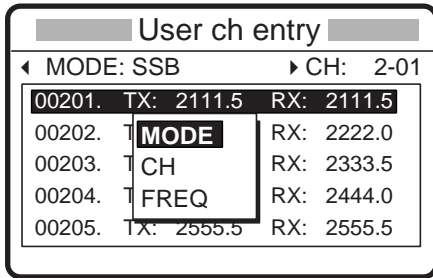
4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MODE and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│  ▓▓▓▓▓ User ch entry ▓▓▓▓▓    │
│ ◄ MODE ┌─────┐   ▶ CH:   2-01 │
│        │ SSB │                │
│ 00201. │NBDP │   RX: 2111.5   │
│ 00202. │DSC  │   RX: 2222.0   │
│ 00203. │CW   │   RX: 2333.5   │
│        └─────┘                │
│ 00204. TX: 2444.0  RX: 2444.0 │
│ 00205. TX: 2555.5  RX: 2555.5 │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```
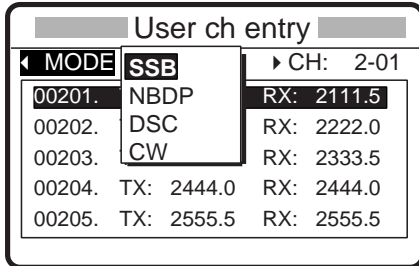
5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate mode among SSB, NBDP and DSC and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│  ▓▓▓▓▓ User ch entry ▓▓▓▓▓    │
│ ◄ MODE:  SSB   ┌────────────┐ │
│                │ C H : 0 – 0 0│ │
│ 00201. TX: 2101.5  RX: 2101.5 │
│ 00202. TX: 2202.0  RX: 2202.0 │
│ 00203. TX: 2303.5  RX: 2303.5 │
│ 00204. TX: 2404.0  RX: 2404.0 │
│ 00205. TX: 2505.5  RX: 2505.5 │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```
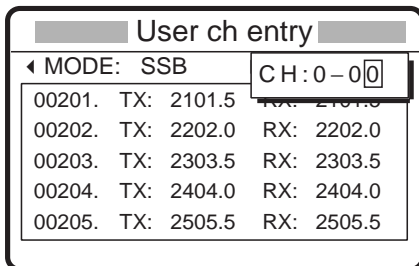
- 256 channels may be registered.
- Band no. setting range is 1-29 and band channel no. range is 01-99.
- For DSC, four channels can be registered per band (2, 4, 6 8, 12, 16, 18, 22, 25).

6. Key in channel no. and then push the **ENTER** knob. For example, press **0**, **1**, **2**, **3**, **4** and then push the **ENTER** knob to enter channel 01234.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│  ▓▓▓▓▓ User ch entry ▓▓▓▓▓    │
│ ◄ MODE : SSB     ▶ CH : 12-34 │
│ ┌────────────────────────────┐│
│ │01234. TX:   0.0  RX:   0.0 ││
│ │01240. TX: 12666.0 RX: 13666.0│
│ │01241. TX:┌──────────────┐  ││
│ │01242. TX:│ TX :  0.0 kHz │  ││
│ │01250. TX:│ RX :  0.0 kHz │  ││
│ │          └──────────────┘  ││
│ └────────────────────────────┘│
└──────────────────────────────┘
```
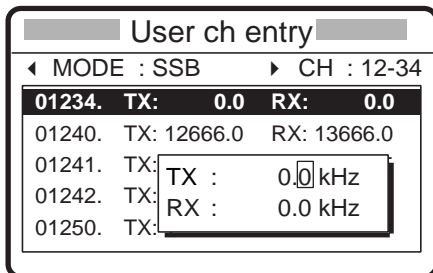
7. Enter TX frequency with the numeric keys.
8. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose RX.
9. Enter RX frequency with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.
10. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to display all channels entered.
11. Press the **CANCEL** key twice.

6.4.2   Deleting user channels

Deleting individual user channels

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USER CH and then push the **ENTER** knob twice.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose CH and then push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Key in the channel number to be deleted, and then push the **ENTER** knob.
5. Tx and Rx frequencies are shown as "0.0 kHz"; push the **ENTER** knob to delete channel.
6. Press the **CANCEL** key twice to return to the radiotelephone screen.

Deleting all user channels

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MEM CLR and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USER CHANNELS and then push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose YES and then push the **ENTER** knob.
5. Press the **CANCEL** key twice to return to the radiotelephone screen.

6.5   Preparing TX Message

For the individual, PSTN, Group and Test messages, you can create messages and store them in the memory for future use. You can recall these messages, for editing or sending, with the */**FILE/CURSOR** key. Maximum 100 messages can be stored into the memory.

6.5.1   Preparing individual calls

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key to open the setup menu.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MESSAGE.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the MSG TYPE menu.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓  Message file entry  ▓▓    │
│ ┌────────────────────────┐   │
│ │MSG  TYPE │INDIVIDUAL │  │   │
│ │STATION ID│PSTN MESSAGE│  │   │
│ │COMM MODE │TEST MESSAGE│  │   │
│ │COMM FREQ │GROUP MESSAGE  │  │
│ │DSC  FREQ └──────────┘   │   │
│ │ ▼                       │   │
│ └────────────────────────┘   │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose INDIVIDUAL and then push the **ENTER** knob.

6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the STATION ID entry window.

```
▓▓▓  Message file entry  ▓▓▓

MSG  TYPE      : INDIVIDUAL
STATION ID     000000000
COMM MODE  : TELEPHONE
COMM FREQ  : NO  INFO
DSC  FREQ     : 2M-INTL
▼
```

7. Key in ID of coast station or ship station with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.
8. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COMM MODE window.

```
▓▓▓  Message file entry  ▓▓▓

MSG  TYPE      :   TELEPHONE
STATION ID    :     NBDP
COMM MODE  :   NBDP-FEC
COMM FREQ  :
DSC  FREQ     : 2M-INTL
▼
```

9. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose communication type desired and then push the **ENTER** knob.
10. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COMM FREQ window.

```
▓▓▓  Message file entry  ▓▓▓

MSG  TYPE:      INDIVIDUAL
STATION ID    : 123456789
COMM MODE  :   NO INFO
              FREQUENCY
COMM FREQ  :   CHANNEL
DSC  FREQ     : POSITION*
▼
```

* NO INFO and POSITION appears
 when coast station ID is entered in
 the field STATION ID.

11. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate item and then push the **ENTER** knob.
    Call to coast station: NO INFO or POSITION.
    Call to ship station: FREQUENCY or CHANNEL. Enter appropriate frequency or
                               channel, referring to page 5-3.
12. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

```
▓▓▓  Messag    2 MHZ   y  ▓▓▓
                4 MHZ
MSG  TYPE       6 MHZ
STATION ID      8 MHZ
COMM MODE   12 MHZ
COMM FREQ    ▼
DSC  FREQ         : 2M-INTL
▼
```

Rotate **ENTER** knob
to scroll.
```
▲
16 MHZ
18 MHZ
22 MHZ
25 MHZ
```

13. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate DSC band and then push the **ENTER** knob.
14. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate DSC frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob.
15. Enter file name and number as shown below.

How to Enter File Name and Number

1. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the file name entry window.

```
████  Message file entry  ████
▲
FILE NAME
      ┌──┐
      │  │
      └──┘
FILE NUMBER : ---

                    FILE ENTRY
```
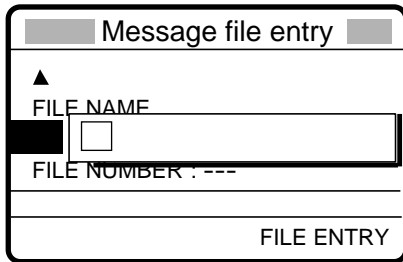
2. Use the numeric keys and **ENTER** knob to enter file name (max. 16 characters). For example, enter FURUNO as the file name.

```
Key and available character, symbol
1       : 1→(blank)→1
2ABC    : 2→A→B→C→2
3DEF    : 3→D→E→F→3
4GHI    : 4→G→H→I→4
5JKL    : 5→J→K→L→5
6MNO    : 6→M→N→O→6
7PQRS   : 7→P→Q→R→S→7
8TUV    : 8→T→U→V→8
9WXYZ   : 9→W→X→Y→Z→9
0       : 0→_→ − →0

1. Rotate ENTER knob to select location.
2. Press appropriate key.
```

```
How to enter "FURUNO" as file name

1. Press the 3 key to display F.
2. Rotate ENTER knob to shift cursor.
3. Press the 8 key to select U.
4. Rotate ENTER knob to shift cursor.
5. Press the 7 key to select R.
6. Rotate ENTER knob to shift cursor.
7. Press the 8 key to select U.
8. Rotate ENTER knob to shift cursor.
9. Press the 6 key to select N.
10. Rotate ENTER knob to shift cursor.
11. Press the 6 key to select O.
12. Push the ENTER knob.
```

3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the file number entry window. Key in file number in three digits with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob. For example, press **0**, **0**, **1**, **ENTER** knob to enter file number 001.

```
████  Message file entry  ████
▲
FILE NAME
    : FURUNO
FILE NUMBER  001

                    FILE ENTRY
```
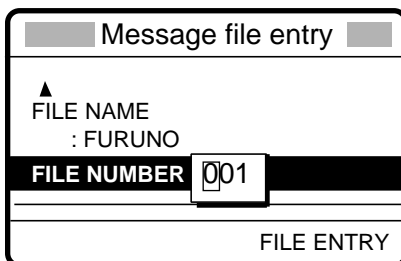
Note: The available file number is 001-799 and 900-999.

4. Push the **ENTER** knob. The display shows the name and file number entered.

```
▌▌▌  Message file entry  ▌▌▌
┌─────────────────────────┐
│ FURUNO                  │
│ No.001 file entered     │
│ Go to next file?        │
│ YES: [ENT] key          │
│ NO: [CANCEL] key        │
│      FILE ENTRY         │
└─────────────────────────┘
```
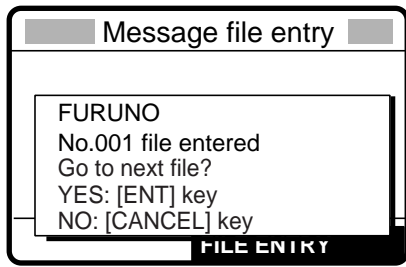
If the file name or number exists the message "Duplicate name (number) ! Overwrite OK?" appears. Push the **ENTER** knob to write over the name, or press the **CANCEL** key to escape.

5. Push the **ENTER** knob to continue

6.5.2 Preparing group calls

To receive the group calls, registering of the group ID is necessary as below.

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MESSAGE.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the MSG TYPE menu.

```
▌▌▌  Message file entry  ▌▌▌
 MSG  TYPE   │INDIVIDUAL    │
 STATION ID  │PSTN MESSAGE  │
 COMM MODE   │TEST MESSAGE  │
 COMM FREQ   │GROUP MESSAGE │
 DSC  FREQ   └──────────────┘
 ▼
```
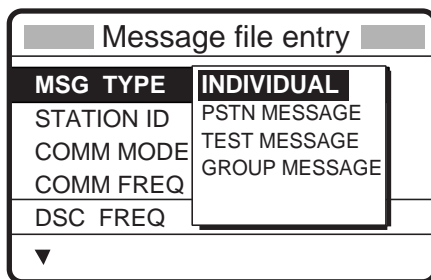
5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose GROUP MESSAGE and then push the **ENTER** knob.
6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the GROUP ID entry window.

```
▌▌▌  Message file entry  ▌▌▌
 MSG  TYPE:     GROUP MESSAGE
 GROUP ID    │ 000000000 │
 COMM MODE   : TELEPHONE
 COMM FREQ   : NO  INFO
 DSC  FREQ   : 2M-INTL
 ▼
```
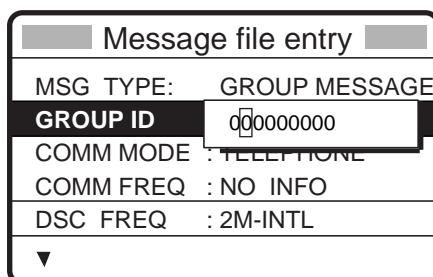
7. Key in ID of group with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.

8. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COMM MODE menu.

```
▧▧▧ Message file entry ▧▧▧
MSG  TYPE:      GROUP MESSAGE
GROUP ID      : 012345678
COMM MODE  :  TELEPHONE
COMM FREQ  :    NBDP-FEC
DSC  FREQ    :  2M-INTL
▼
```
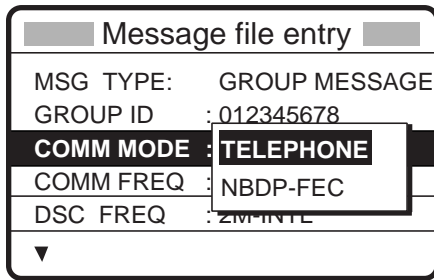
9. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate communications type and then push the **ENTER** knob.
10. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COMM FREQ menu.

```
▧▧▧ Message file entry ▧▧▧
MSG  TYPE:      GROUP MESSAGE
GROUP ID      : 012345678
COMM MODE  :  FREQUENCY
COMM FREQ  :    CHANNEL
DSC  FREQ    :
▼
```
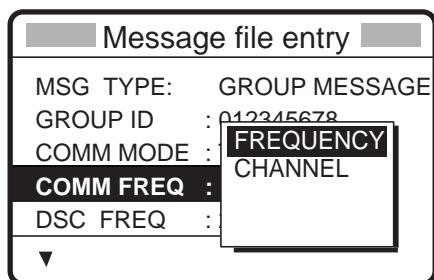
11. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate item and then push the **ENTER** knob.
12. Enter frequency or channel.
13. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

Rotate **ENTER** knob
to scroll.

```
▧▧▧ Messag ▧▧▧ | 2 MHZ
MSG  TYPE          4 MHZ          ▲
GROUP ID          6 MHZ          16 MHZ
COMM MODE      8 MHZ     E   18 MHZ
COMM FREQ      12 MHZ         22 MHZ
                  ▼              25 MHZ
DSC  FREQ    :   2M-INTL
▼
```
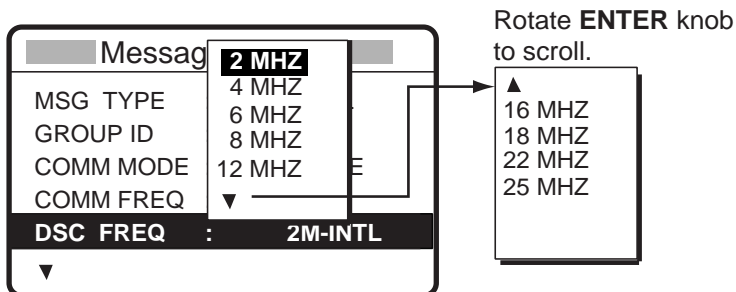
14. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate DSC band and then push the **ENTER** knob.
15. Choose appropriate DSC frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob.
16. Follow "How to Enter File Name and Number" on page 6-6 to enter file name and number.

6.5.3 Preparing PSTN calls

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MESSAGE.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the MSG TYPE menu.

```
████ Message file entry ████

MSG  TYPE    INDIVIDUAL
STATION ID   PSTN MESSAGE
COMM MODE    TEST MESSAGE
COMM FREQ    GROUP MESSAGE
DSC  FREQ
▼
```

5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose PSTN MESSAGE and then push the **ENTER** knob.
6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the COAST ID entry window.

```
████ Message file entry ████

MSG  TYPE     : PSTN MESSAGE
COAST ID      000000000
TEL NO.
         : ----------------
DSC  FREQ     : 2M-INTL
▼
```

7. Key in ID of coast station (seven digits) with the numeric keys then push the **ENTER** knob.
8. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the TEL. NO. entry window.

```
████ Message file entry ████

MSG  TYPE:    PSTN MESSAGE
COAST ID     : 001234567
TEL NO.      ---------------
         :
DSC  FREQ     : 2M-INTL
▼
```

9. Key in telephone no. (up to 16 digits) with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.
10. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

```
████ Message ███   2 MHZ        Rotate the ENTER knob
                   4 MHZ        to scroll.
MSG  TYPE:         6 MHZ        ▲
COAST ID           8 MHZ        16 MHZ
TEL NO. :          12 MHZ       18 MHZ
                   ▼            22 MHZ
DSC  FREQ   : 2M-INTL    TL     25 MHZ
▼
```

11. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate DSC band and then push the **ENTER** knob.
12. Choose appropriate DSC frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob.
13. Follow "How to Enter File Name and Number" on page 6-6 to enter file name and number.

6.5.4   Preparing test call

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MESSAGE and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the MSG TYPE menu.

```
■■■ Message file entry ■■■
MSG  TYPE   INDIVIDUAL
STATION ID  PSTN MESSAGE
COMM MODE   TEST MESSAGE
COMM FREQ   GROUP MESSAGE
DSC  FREQ
▼
```

4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose TEST MESSAGE and then push the **ENTER** knob.
5. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the STATION ID entry window.

```
■■■ Message file entry ■■■
MSG TYPE    : TEST
STATION ID  000000000

DSC FREQ    :      2187.5 KHZ
▼
```

6. Enter station ID where to send the test message and then push the **ENTER** knob.
7. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu.

```
■■■ Message file entry ■■■
MSG TYPE    2187.5
STATION ID  4207.5
            6312.0
            8414.5
           12577.0
           16804.5
DSC FREQ           KHZ
```

8. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose appropriate DSC frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob.
9. Follow "How to Enter File Name and Number" on page 6-6 to enter file name and number.

6.5.5   Sending prepared messages

Sending without modification

1. Press the **FILE/CURSOR** key at the DSC standby screen to show the send message file list. Below is an example of the send message file list.

```
▧▧▧ Send message file ▧▧▧
001 : FURUNO JAPAN
002 : FURUNO USA
003 : FURUNO UK
004 : FURUNO DENMARK
005 : FURUNO NORWAY
006 : FURUNO SPAIN


                  ▼ DOWN
```
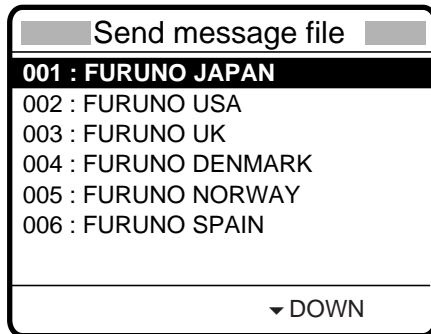
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose a file.
3. Press the **CALL** key to send the message.

Editing before sending

1. Press the **FILE/CURSOR** key at the DSC standby screen to show the send message file list.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose file desired and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
DETAIL
DELETE
```

3. DETAIL is selected; push the **ENTER** knob. The message contents are shown on the "Compose msg." Screen.
4. Edit the message as necessary.
5. Press the **CALL** key to send the message.

6.5.6   Deleting send message

Deleting send messages individually

1. Press the **FILE/CURSOR** key at the DSC standby screen to show the send message file list.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose file desired and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
DETAIL
DELETE
```

3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DELETE and then push the **ENTER** knob.

Deleting all messages
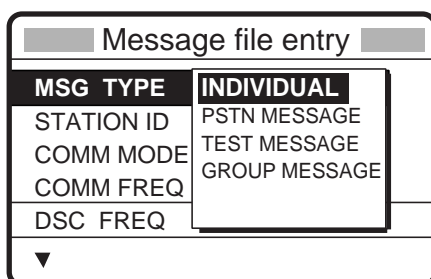
1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose the MEM CLR.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose the MESSAGE FILES.
4. Push the **ENTER** knob.
5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose YES.
6. Push the **ENTER** knob.

6.5.7 Printing List of Send Message Files

You can print a list of send message files as follows:

1. Press the **FILE/CURSOR** key to open the Send message file list.
2. Press the **8/PRINT** key.
3. YES is selected; push the **ENTER** knob to print.

```
********** Send message file **********
001. FURUNO JAPAN     INDIVIDUAL MESSAGE
002. FURUNO USA       INDIVIDUAL MESSAGE
003. FURUNO UK        PSTN MESSAGE
004. FURUNO DENMARK   GROUP MESSAGE
005. FURUNO NORWAY    INDIVIDUAL MESSAGE
006. FURUNO SPAIN     GROUP MESSAGE
007. FURUNO FRANCE    INDIVIDUAL MESSAGE
```

Note: Message not framed in actual printout.

6.6 Manual Entry of Position and Time

If there is no EPFS (Electronic Position-Fixing System) connected to this equipment or the EPFS connected is not working (EPFS error indication appears), manually enter position and time as follows:

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose POSITION.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
▓▓▓▓▓▓ Position setup ▓▓▓▓▓▓

 Last updated: EPFS
 LAT :  34  41.0000 N
 LON : 135° 30.0000 E
 TIME:  09: 00 UTC
```
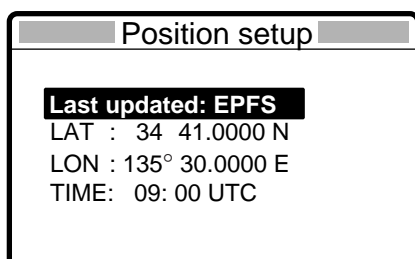
"Last updated" shows the method used at the last time, EPFS, MANUAL or NO INFO (information).

Note: If, when "Last updated" is EPFS, input from the navigator is interrupted, the message "EPFS error" appears. If this occurs, check the navigator.

4. Push the **ENTER** knob to show the position method window, and then rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose the EPFS, MANUAL or NO INFO.
5. Press the **ENTER** knob. Go to step 6 only when choosing MANUAL at step 4.
6. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the latitude input window. Use the numeric keys to enter latitude. If necessary, switch coordinates: **1/RT/CH** key to switch to North; **2/DSC** key to switch to South. Push the **ENTER** knob.
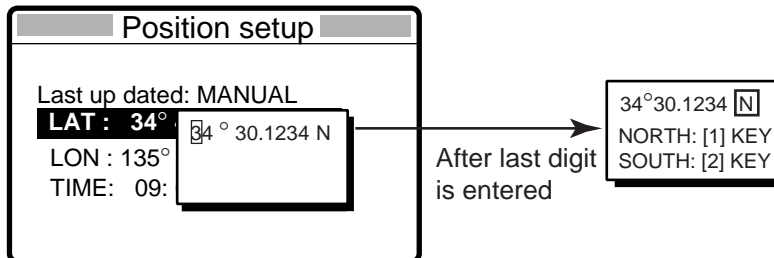
```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓  Position setup  ▓▓▓      │
│                              │
│ Last up dated: MANUAL        │
│ ▐LAT :  34°▌ ┌──────────────┐│
│ LON : 135°  │34 ° 30.1234 N ││
│ TIME:  09:  │              ││
│             └──────────────┘│
│                              │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

After last digit is entered →

```
┌──────────────────────┐
│ 34°30.1234 N        │
│ NORTH: [1] KEY      │
│ SOUTH: [2] KEY      │
└──────────────────────┘
```

7. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the longitude input window. Use the numeric keys to enter longitude. If necessary, switch coordinates: **1/RT/CH** key to switch to East; **2/DSC** key to switch to West. Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓  Position setup  ▓▓▓      │
│                              │
│ Last up dated: MANUAL        │
│  LAT :  34° 30 NORTH         │
│ ▐LON : 135▌┌───────────────┐ │
│ TIME:  09  │135°30.1234 E  │ │
│            └───────────────┘ │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

After last digit is entered →

```
┌──────────────────────┐
│ 135°30.1234 E       │
│ EAST: [1] KEY       │
│ WEST: [2] KEY       │
└──────────────────────┘
```

8. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the time input window.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ ▓▓▓  Position setup  ▓▓▓      │
│                              │
│  Last up dated: MANUAL        │
│  LAT :   34°30.1234 N         │
│  LON : 135° 30.1234 E         │
│ ▐TIME:  09▌┌──────────┐       │
│            │12 : 34   │       │
│            └──────────┘       │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```
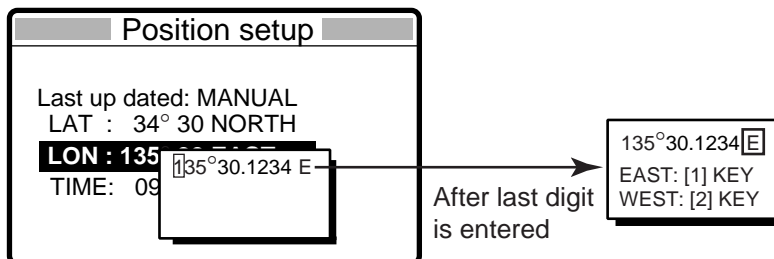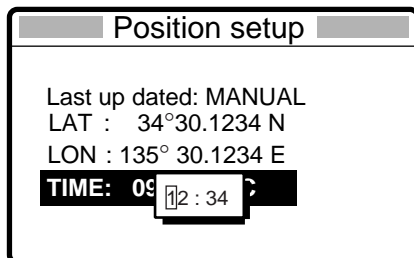
9. Enter UTC time with the numeric keys and then push the **ENTER** knob.
10. Press the **CANCEL** key.

Note: When "Last updated" is MANUAL, the message "Warning: Update position" appears at set intervals (update interval selected with POSITION OLDER on the Alarm menu) to ask you to update position.

6.7   Date and Time Setting

Set the date and time for the system.

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose DATE/TIME.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
━━━━━━ Date/Time setup ━━━━━━

 SOURCE: INTERNAL
 DATE: 2008/02/29
 TIME: 11:45  UTC

```
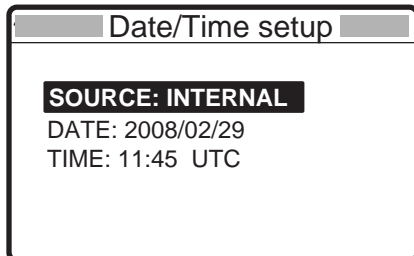
SOURCE: Choose INTERNAL or EPFS (using ZDA).

DATE: Enter the date for manual setting.

TIME: Enter time for manual setting.

4. Choose DATE, and push the **ENTER** knob.
5. Use the numeric keys to enter year/month/date, and push the **ENTER** knob.
6. The cursor chooses TIME; push the **ENTER** knob.
7. Use the numeric keys to enter the time, and push the **ENTER** knob.

6.8   Memory Clear

Logs, messages files and user channels in the memory can be cleared. Also, the settings are able to restore to the default setting.

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MEM CLR.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
━━━━ Memory clear ━━━━

 RCVD ORDINARY LOG
 RCVD DISTRESS LOG
 TRANSMITTED LOG
 MESSAGE FILES
 USER CHANNELS
 LOAD DEFAULT
```
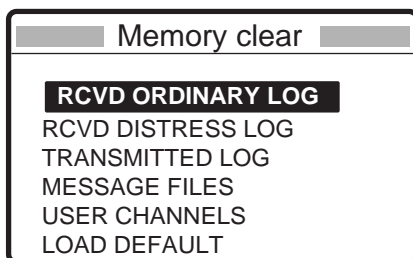
Clearing received ordinary log

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose RCVD ORDINARY LOG.
2. Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
CLEAR
RCVD ORDINARY LOG.

ARE YOU SURE ?
    YES      NO
```
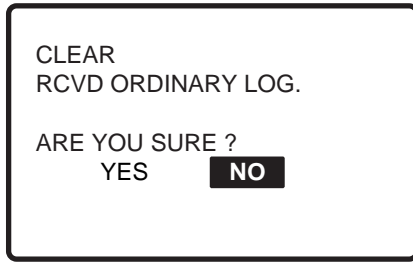
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose YES, and push the **ENTER** knob.

Clearing received distress log

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose RCVD DISTRESS LOG.
2. Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
CLEAR
RCVD DISTRESS LOG.

ARE YOU SURE ?
    YES      NO
```
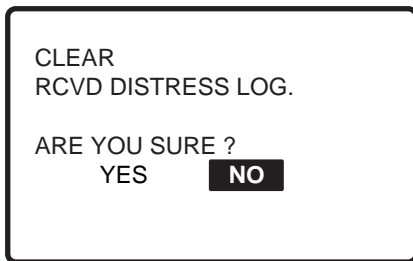
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose YES, and push the **ENTER** knob.

Clearing transmitted log

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose TRANSMITTED LOG.
2. Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
CLEAR
TRANSMITTED LOG.

ARE YOU SURE ?
    YES      NO
```

3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose YES, and push the **ENTER** knob.

Clearing message files

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MESSAGE FILES.
2. Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
CLEAR
MESSAGE FILES.

ARE YOU SURE ?
     YES      NO
```
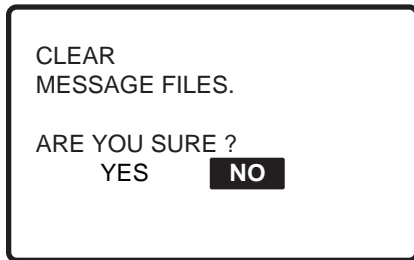
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose YES, and push the **ENTER** knob.

Clearing user channels

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USER CHANNELS.
2. Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
CLEAR
USER CHANNELS.

ARE YOU SURE ?
     YES      NO
```

3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose YES, and push the **ENTER** knob.

Restoring to default setting

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose LOAD DEFAULT.
2. Push the **ENTER** knob.

```
LOAD DEFAULT.


ARE YOU SURE ?
     YES      NO
```

3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose YES, and push the **ENTER** knob.

6.9   Setting Alarms

The Alarm setup menu enables or disables the internal and external alarm beep. Note that the receiving alarm beep for the distress and urgency cannot be disable.

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USR SETUP, and push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ALARM, and push the **ENTER** knob.

Default: ON

OFF
ON

Disables/enables alarm for received Safety and Routine calls.

Rotate
ENTER
knob to choose.

Alarm setup

INTERNAL ALARM   : OFF
POSITION OLDER   :4.0 H

EXT ALARM : DSTRS/URG
ALARM DISTANCE: 500 NM

Default: 4.0 hours

4.0
3.0
2.0
1.0
0.5

Alarm is output when position is older by the number of hours set here.

Default: 500 NM

OFF
500 NM

Enable or disable reception of the distress alarm received from a ship in distress which is more than 500 miles from own ship.

Default: DSTRS/URG

DSTRS/URG
ROUTINE
ALL
OFF

Sets type of call to be output to the IC-303.

DSTRS/URG: Distress or urgency call output upon receipt.
ROUTINE: Routine call output upon receipt.
ALL: All calls output.
OFF: No output.

6.10 Sound Setting

The SOUND menu lets you set the volume for the following items:

- Key click on/off

- Volume of the receiving alarm for the safety and routine messages

- Volume of the receiving alarm for the distress and urgency

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USR SETUP, and push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose SOUND, and push the **ENTER** knob.

Default: ON

OFF
ON

Turns on/off beep generated when keyboard is operated.
Note: Do not confuse keyboard beep (single beep) with ACK beep (three beeps).

Sound setup

KEY CLICK   : ON
ORDINARY ALARM : 30
DISTRESS ALARM : 63

ORDINARY ALARM
VOLUME (0~63)
◀ ▮▮▮▮▮▮▮   ▶ 47

Rotate **ENTER** knob to set.
Sets loudness of Safety, Routine and Old Position alarms.

DISTRESS ALARM
VOLUME (38~63)
◀ ▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮ ▶ 63

Rotate **ENTER** knob to set.

Sets loudness of Distress and Urgency alarms.

6.11   Setting the AUTO ACK Details

The acknowledgement message may be sent automatically when you receive a message which requires acknowledgement. You can also enable or disable it for position, polling and test messages. Note that the automatic acknowledge is automatically disabled when RX call contains error, as required by law. Further, automatic acknowledge is disabled in case of OFF HOOK.

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Choose USR SETUP, and push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose AUTO ACK, and push the ENTER knob.

Default: ABLE

UNABLE
ABLE

Effective when **5/ACK/SQ** key is set for "AUTO ACK."
ABLE: Sends ABLE acknowledge automatically.
UNABLE: Sends UNABLE acknowledge automatically.

Note: Automatic acknowledge is automatically disabled when RX call contains error, as required by law. Further, automatic acknowledge is disabled in case of OFF HOOK.

Default: NO REASON

NO REASON
BUSY
EQUIP DISABLE
MODE NOT USABLE
CH NOT USABLE

Rotate **ENTER** knob to choose

Sets reason for UNABLE.

Note: This menu is the same as manual acknowledgement. EQUIPMENT DISABLE is shown in calls when EQUIP DISABLE is selected.

```
▬▬▬ Auto ack setup ▬▬▬
COMPLY TYPE     : ABLE
UNABLE REASON :
      NO REASON GIVEN
POSITION MESSAGE: OFF
POLLING MESSAGE: ON
TEST MESSAGE: ON
```

Default: OFF

OFF
ON

Effective when **5/ACK/SQ** key is set for "AUTO ACK."
OFF: Disables automatic acknowledgement of position request.
ON: Enables automatic acknowledgement of position request.

Default: ON

OFF
ON

Effective when **5/ACK/SQ** key is set for "AUTO ACK."
OFF: Disables automatic acknowledgement of test call.
ON: Enables automatic acknowledgement of test call.

Default: ON

OFF
ON

Effective when **5/ACK/SQ** key is set for "AUTO ACK."
OFF: Disables automatic acknowledgement of polling request.
ON: Enables automatic acknowledgement of polling request.

6.12 Printing Messages

The Print Out menu enables/disables automatic printing of all transmitted and received calls and the results of the daily test.

1. Press the **SETUP** key.
2. Choose USR SETUP and PRINT OUT in order, and push the **ENTER** knob to display the Print out set up menu.

Default: MANUAL

Select AUTO to automatically print transmitted calls.

```
 ▭▭▭▭ Print out setup ▭▭▭▭

      XMIT MESSAGE: MANUAL
      RCVD MESSAGE: MANUAL
      DAILY TEST : MANUAL
```

Default: MANUAL

Select AUTO to automatically print received calls.

Default: MANUAL

Select AUTO to automatically print results of Daily Test.
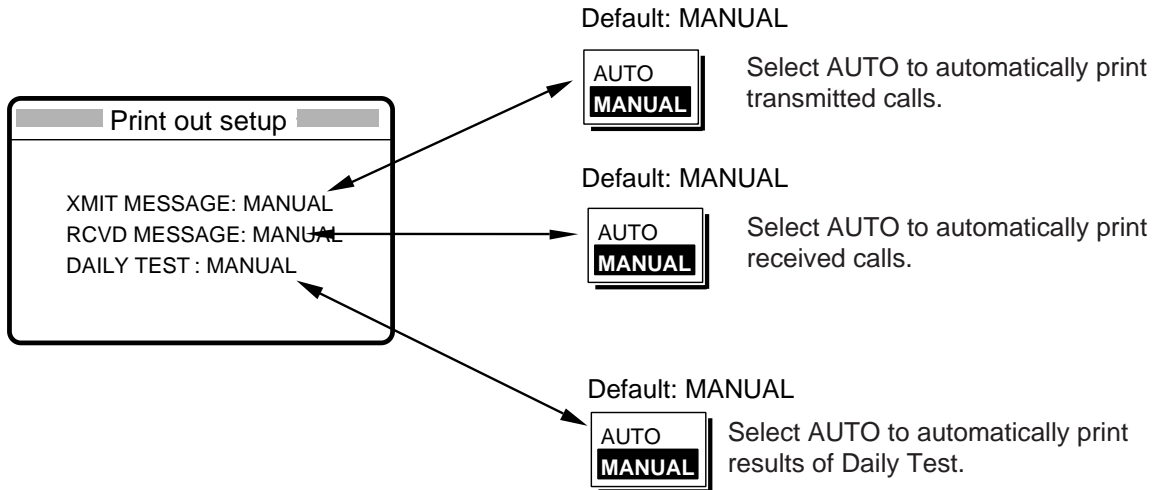
Sample printouts

Printing can be done automatically or manually. For manual printing, press the **PRINT** key. Note that calls having more than one page (for example, received calls) are printed out in their entirety.

```
 * Received message at JUN-08-2006-16:10:12 *
DISTRESS ALERT
SELF-IDENTITY             : 777777777
NATURE OF DISTRESS        : UNDESIGNATED DISTRESS
DISTRESS COORDINATES      : NO INFORMATION
DISTRESS TELECOMMAND      : TELEPHONE
END OF SEQUENCE           : EOS
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT REQUIRED
ERROR-CHECK               : OK
DSC FREQUENCY      TX: 2187.5 kHz
                   RX: 2187.5 kHz
```
Sample Received Message Printout (Distress)

```
 * Received message at JUN-08-2006-16:10:12 *
INDIVIDUAL REQUEST
DESTINATION ID           : 111111111
PRIORITY                 : ROUTINE
SELF-IDENTITY            : 987654321
COMMUNICATION MODE       : TELEPHONE
COMMUNICATION OPTION     : NO INFORMATION
WORKING FREQUENCY        : NO INFORMATION
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT REQUIRED
ERROR-CHECK              : OK

DSC FREQUENCY      TX: 2177.0 kHz
                   RX: 2177.0 kHz
```
Sample Received Message Printout (Individual)

```
*Transmitted message at JUN-08-2006-16:10:12 *
DISTRESS ALERT
SELF-IDENTITY             : 111111111
NATURE OF DISTRESS        : UNDESIGNATED DISTRESS
DISTRESS COORDINATES      : NO INFORMATION
COMMUNICATION MODE        : TELEPHONE
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT REQUIRED

DSC FREQUENCY      TX: 2177.0 kHz
                   RX: 2177.0 kHz
```

```
*Transmitted message at JUN-08-2006-16:10:12 *
INDIVIDUAL REQUEST
DESTINATION ID           : 123456789
PRIORITY                 : ROUTINE
SELF-IDENTITY            : 111111111
COMMUNICATION MODE       : TELEPHONE
COMMUNICATION OPTION     : NO INFORMATION
WORKING FREQUENCY        : NO INFORMATION
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT REQUIRED
DSC FREQUENCY      TX: 2177.0 kHz
                   RX: 2177.0 kHz
```

Sample Transmitted Message Printout (Distress) Sample Transmitted Message Printout (Individual)

Note: Messages are not framed in actual printouts.

6.13   Setting Scan Frequencies

The Scan freq menu determines which DSC routine and distress frequencies to scan. Follow the instructions below to select/deselect DSC routine and distress frequencies to scan.

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USR SETUP, and push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose SCAN FREQ, and then push the **ENTER** knob to display the Scan freq setup menu.

```
━━━━ Scan freq setup ━━━━
ROUTINE          DISTRESS
F1  :  2M-INTL    2M : FIXED
F2 :  4M-INTL     4M : ON
F3 :  6M-INTL     6M : ON
F4 :  8M-INTL     8M : FIXED
F5 : 12M-INTL    12M : ON
F6 : 16M-INTL    16M : OFF
```

Distress and safety frequencies

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob clockwise to shift the cursor to the DISTRESS column.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose the frequency band and then push the **ENTER** knob. For example, choose 4 MHz.

```
━━━━ Scan freq setup ━━━━
ROUTINE          DISTRESS
F1 :  2M-INTL     2M : OFF
F2 :  2M-INTL     4M : ON
F3 :  4M-INTL     6M : ON
F4 :  8M-INTL     8M : FIXED
F5 : 12M-INTL    12M : ON
F6 : 16M-INTL    16M : OFF
```

3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ON or OFF as appropriate and then push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Press the **CANCEL** key three times to return to the radiotelephone screen.

Note: Regulations require that 2 MHz and 8 MHz and one more DSC distress frequency be watched continuously. 2 MHz and 8 MHz cannot be turned off. Maximum three bands may be turned off.

Routine frequencies

1. Rotate the **ENTER** knob clockwise to shift the cursor to the ROUTINE column.

```
▃▃▃▃▃ Scan freq setup ▃▃▃▃▃
ROUTINE          DISTRESS
F1 :  2M-INTL     2M : FIXED
F2 :  4M-INTL     4M : ON
F3 :  6M-INTL     6M : ON
F4 :  8M-INTL     8M : FIXED
F5 : 12M-INTL    12M : ON
F6 : 16M-INTL    16M : OFF
```

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose the frequency band. For example, choose F1.

```
▃▃▃▃▃ Scan freq setup ▃▃▃▃▃
ROU  OFF         DISTRESS
F1 : 2 MHZ        2M : FIXED
F2 : 4 MHZ   3    4M : ON
F3 : 6 MHZ        6M : ON
F4 : 8 MHZ        8M : FIXED
F5 :             12M : ON
F6 : ▾           16M : OFF
```

3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose a frequency to set.
4. Push the **ENTER** knob, and the display looks something like the one below.

```
▃▃▃▃▃ Scan freq setup ▃▃▃▃▃
ROUTINE          DISTRESS
INTL    : T 2189.5/R 2177.0
DIST    : T2187.5/R 2187.5

┌ - - - - - - - - - - ┐  ← User channel appears if registered.
```

5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose frequency desired and then push the **ENTER** knob.
    INTL: International channels
    DIST: Distress channels
    LOCAL1/LOCAL2:   Local channels
    USER: User channel
6. Press the **CANCEL** key three times to return to the radiotelephone screen.

Note: Distress frequencies can be stored on the routine frequency memory. This is convenient for backing up the watch-keeping receiver.

6.14   Key Assignment

The **8/PRINT** key can function as a short-key, providing quick access to a function without opening the menu. You can program one of the functions listed below, and the default setting is NONE (shortcut function is disabled).

- NONE: Not assigned any function.

- NB: Noise blanker on/off

- TONE: Transmit/stop the tone signal.

- SDUP/DUP: Changes the communication mode on the duplex channel (FS-5070 only)

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USR SETUP, and push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose KEY ASSIGN, and push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│ ▒▒▒▒ Key assign setup ▒▒▒▒ │
│                          │
│ ██PRINT KEY:  NONE██      │
│                          │
│                          │
│                          │
│                          │
└──────────────────────────┘
```
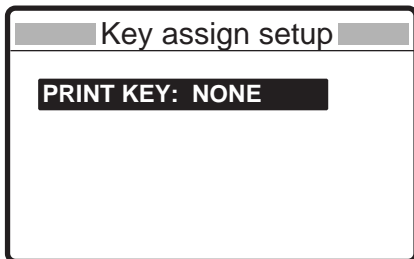
4. Push the **ENTER** knob.
5. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose NONE, NB, TONE or SDUP/DUP as appropriate.
6. Push the **ENTER** knob.

6.15   Special Messages

Permission to transmit NEWTRAL CRAFT and MEDICAL TRANSPORT can be enabled or disabled as follows:

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USR SETUP, and push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose SPECIAL MSG, and push the **ENTER** knob to show the following menu.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│      Special Msg Setup    │
├──────────────────────────┤
│ ██NEUTRAL MSG     : ABLE██ │
│   MEDICAL MSG     : ABLE   │
└──────────────────────────┘
```
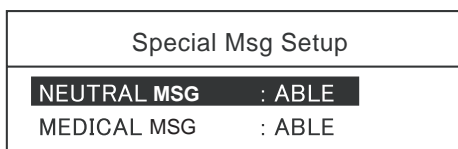
4. Choose NEUTRAL MSG or MEDICAL MSG, and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌──────────────┐
│  UNABLE       │
│ ██ABLE██       │
└──────────────┘
```

5. Choose ABLE or UNABLE as appropriate, and then push the **ENTER** knob.
6. Press the **CANCEL** key to return to the radiotelephone screen.

6.16   FAX Enable/Disable

You may enable or disable FAX use as follows. This setting is necessary when the facsimile is connected and used to receive.

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USR SETUP, and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose FAX Rx and then push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ENABLE or DISABLE as appropriate and then push the **ENTER** knob.
   When choosing ENABLE, "FAX" is added to the emission mode.

```
┌──────────────────────────────┐
│ CH:        200               │
│ Tx:   2182.0  kHz            │
│ Rx:   2182.00 kHz ◁||        │
│┌────┐ HIGH FAST NB SQ        │
││SSB │                        │
││TLX │         S ▭            │
││FAX │  ▭ 10.0A               │
││AM  │xxxx          UTC 00:00 │
│└────┘N            EPFS 23:59 │
│ 135°00.0000E                 │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```
Emission mode ───→
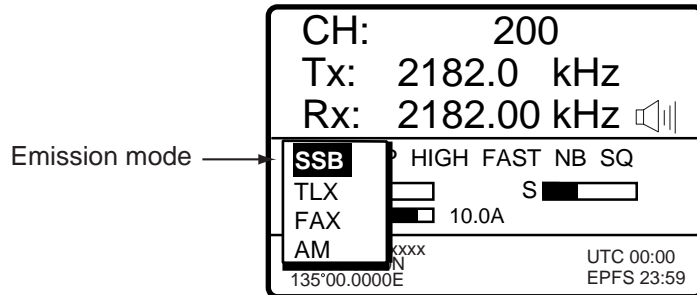
5. Press the **CANCEL** key twice return to the radiotelephone screen.

6.17   Speaker Setting in Off Hook

When the handset is off hook, you may choose to turn the speaker (panel speaker or external speaker) on or off. The default setting is OFF, which turns off the speaker when the handset is off hook. The ON position keeps the speaker on always, regardless of handset state.
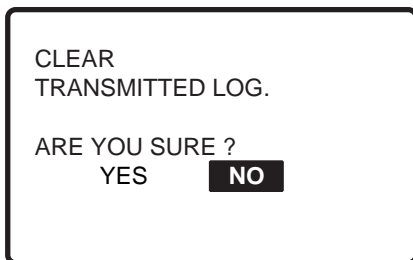
1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USR SETUP and push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose HOOK SP OFF, push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose ON or OFF as appropriate, and push the **ENTER** key.

6.18   Operation Timer Off

When the screen which cannot receive the DSC message is active more than 10 minutes without any operation, the control unit returns to the radiotelephone screen automatically. You can enable/disable this function as below:

1. Press the **#/SETUP** key.
2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose USR SETUP and push the **ENTER** knob.
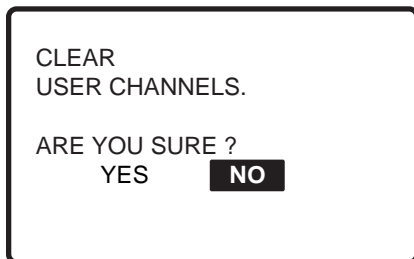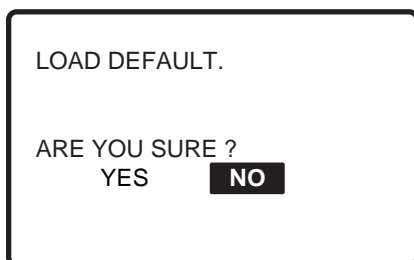3. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose TIMER, push the **ENTER** knob.
4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose 10MIN or OFF as appropriate, and push the ENTER knob.

This page is intentionally left blank.

7. NBDP SYSTEM OVERVIEW

7.1 Turning on the NBDP System

Turn on the terminal unit and the printer with their respective power switches.
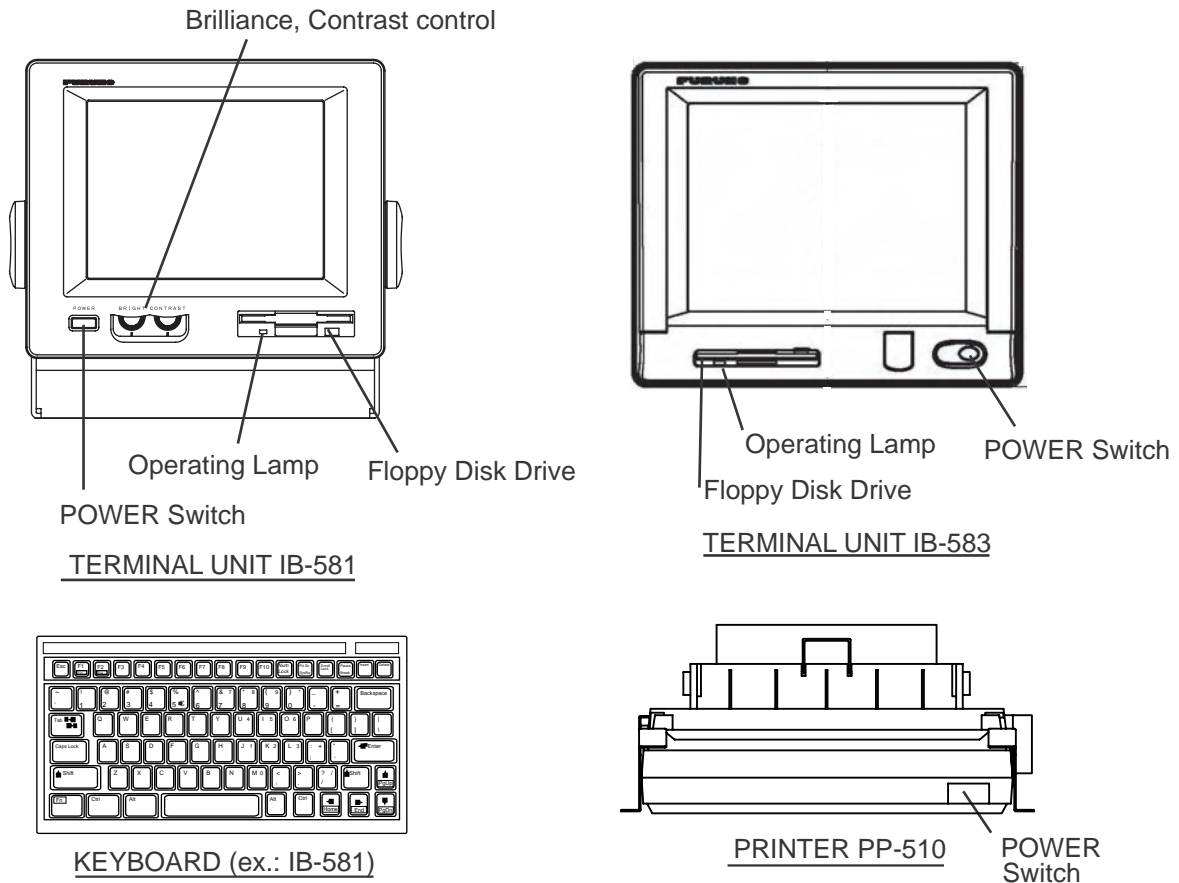
NBDP terminal unit, printer and keyboard

Note 1: To power the system, turn on the control unit then turn on the NBDP terminal unit.

Note 2: The Printer PP-510 prints messages. Refer to its operator's manual for operating information.

Note 3: When the NBDP has priority, the control unit displays "OCCUPIED (NBDP) ".

Note 4: The name for the Insert and Delete keys is different depending on the Terminal Unit (keyboard) used. They are Insert and Delete on IB-581 and Ins and Del on IB-583. This manual shows Insert, Delete.

7.2   Description of Equipment

7.2.1   Terminal unit

The terminal unit is a visual display incorporating a floppy disk drive, which provides for storage of files on floppy disks. Two models are available, IB-581 (monochrome) and IB-583 (color). Controls for power and adjustment of display brilliance and contrast are provided on the front panel of the IB-581. To adjust the brilliance on the IB-583, press **Alt** while pressing **F6** to lower the brilliance; **F7** to raise it. (The IB-583 does not have a control for adjustment of contrast.) Eight levels of brilliance are available.

When the terminal unit is turned on, the communication status display, shown below, appears. This is where all phases of telex communications begin.

```
1:File 2:Edit 3:Operate 4:Window 5:Station 6:System 7:WRU 8:HR 9:Over 10:Break
------------------------------------------------------ 2002-10-15 2:26:45 UTC ------Caps-Eng
 Station Name    :
 Frequency (T/R) :           . /       .  (kHz)   Comm Mode : AUTO
 Comm Status     :   Connect Send Lock Error
 Sending Volume  :       (%)   ARQ Error : 0    ARQ Time : 0(sec)
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Communication status display

Features of the IB-583

The IB-583 is fitted with both English and Russian interface. Choose desired interface as below:

English: Turn on the IB-583 while pressing the **E** key.
Russian: Turn on the IB-583 while pressing the **R** key.

The IB-583 has a battery (type CR2450-F2ST2L, code no. 000-144-941) on its TERM/CPU Board (16P0209) and its life is about six years. When the voltage of the battery is low, the time will be slow. When this occurs, contact your dealer about replacement of the battery.

Note: To switch between Russian and English input, press **Alt** while holding down **Shift**. (This is available in Russian mode only.)

7.2.2   Keyboard

The terminal unit is operated from the keyboard, and is almost 100% keyboard controlled. Operation is simplified by the use of menus which you access by pressing a function key, labeled F1-F10 at the top of the keyboard. The figure below shows the function menus and their corresponding function keys.

Note: € (Euro mark) on [% 5 €] key is not used.
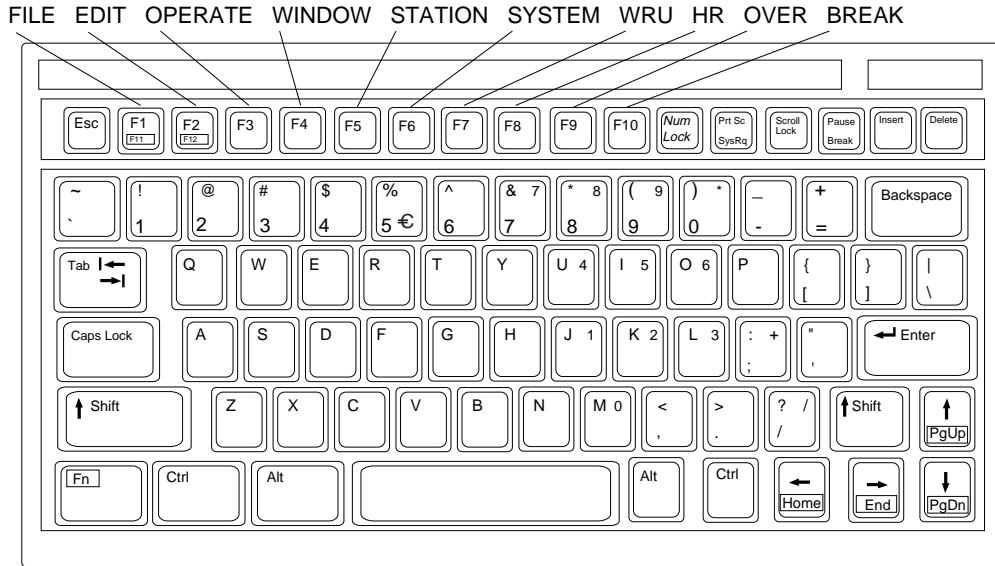
Keyboard for IB-581
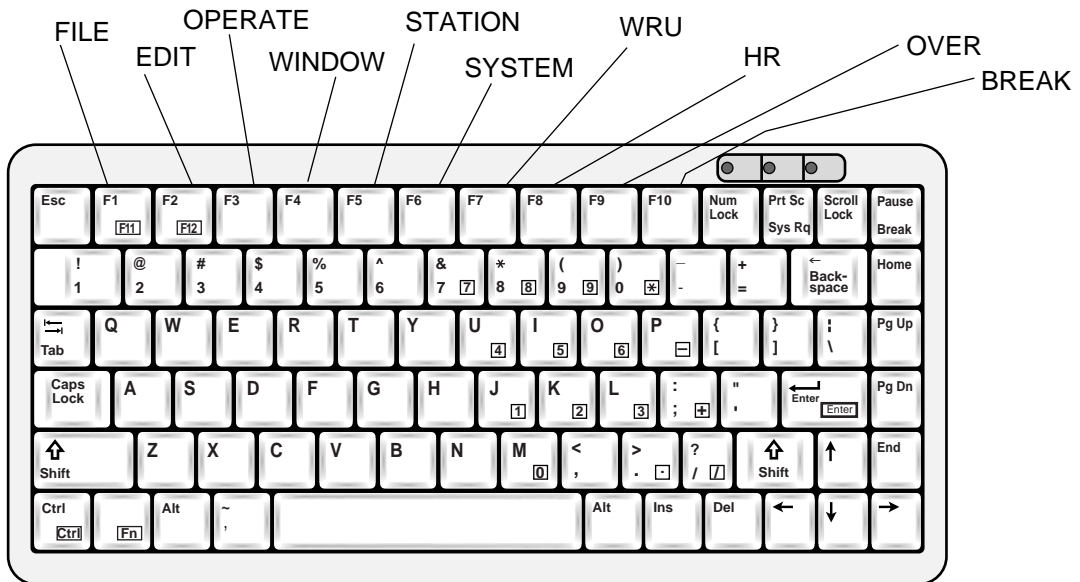
Keyboard for IB-583

7.3 Function Keys, Menu Operation

The function keys at the top of the keyboard control most operations of this unit through a menu system.

7.3.1 Menu conventions

Inverse video

As you move the cursor down through a menu, a selected item, initially shown as white on black (monochrome display), inverses to black on white. This highlighting indicates that it is available for selection.

Underline

The underline shows current selection. In the figure below, for example, the underline is beneath "ARQ" and "Channel."
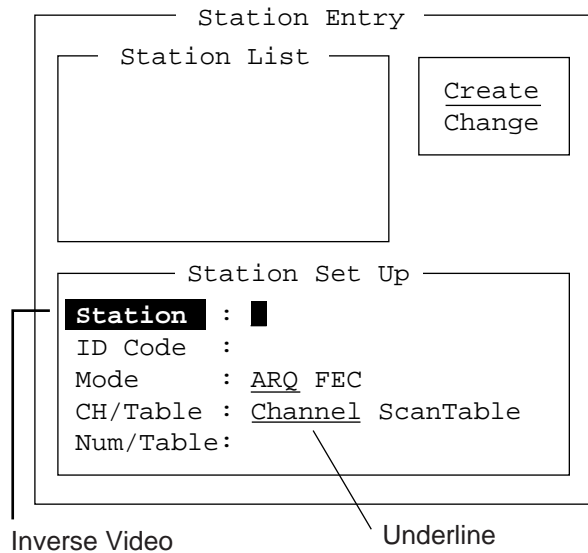
Station entry screen

Note: The example display screen shown in this manual are taken from the IB-583. The screens of the IB-581 are nearly identical to those of the IB-583 except cursor configuration.

7.3.2   Menu overview

Selecting menus

Press appropriate function key to open a menu. To display the File menu, for example, press the function key **F1**.

```
                      ─── File ───
    1: New
    2: Open
    3: Close
    ------------------------------------------
    4: Delete
    ------------------------------------------
    5: Rename
    ------------------------------------------
    6: Real Time Printing
    7: File to Print
    8: Cancel Printing
    ------------------------------------------
    9: Clear Buffer
    ------------------------------------------
    0: Floppy Disk Format
```

File menu

Selecting menu items and options

Menu items can be selected by pressing appropriate numeric key or selecting item desired with the arrow keys and pressing the **Enter** key. Menu options can be selected by operating the ← or → keys. After selecting option desired, press the **Enter** key to register your selection and close the menu.

Closing menu

Press the **ESC** key several times. To open the menu, press the function key to use.

7.3.3   Function key description

Function key [F1]: File menu

The File menu is where you will create, open, save and print telex messages. Floppy disks are also formatted from this menu.

```
┌──────────── File ────────────┐
│                               │
│ 1: New                        │
│ 2: Open                       │
│ 3: Close                      │
│ ----------------------------- │
│ 4: Delete                     │
│ ----------------------------- │
│ 5: Rename                     │
│ ----------------------------- │
│ 6: Real Time Printing         │
│ 7: File to Print              │
│ 8: Cancel Printing            │
│ ----------------------------- │
│ 9: Clear Buffer               │
│ ----------------------------- │
│ 0: Floppy Disk Format         │
│                               │
└───────────────────────────────┘
```
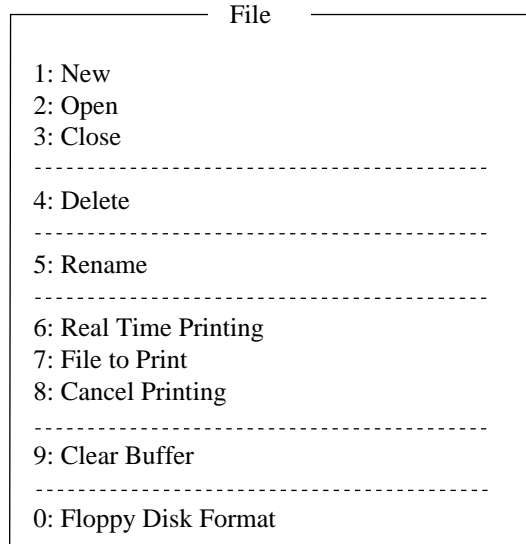
File menu

1: New	Opens a new untitled window.
2: Open	Opens files.
3: Close	Closes files.
4: Delete	Deletes files.
5: Rename	Renames files.
6: Real Time Printing	Turns real time printing on/off.
7: File to Print	Prints files.
8: Cancel Printing	Stops printing.
9: Clear Buffer	Clears the communications buffer.
0: Floppy Disk Format	Formats a floppy disk.

Function key [F2]: Edit menu

The Edit menu provides a full line of editing features.

```
               ┌──── Edit ────┐

1: Undo
-----------------------------
2: Cut
3: Copy
4: Paste
-----------------------------
5: Select All
-----------------------------
6: Search
7: Replace
-----------------------------
8: Goto Top
9: Goto Bottom
0: Goto Line
-----------------------------
A: Change Text
└──────────────────────────┘
```

Edit menu

1: Undo	Cancels the last change (cut, copy or paste).
2: Cut	Removes the selected text and stores it in the paste buffer. (Previous text in the paste buffer is cleared.)
3: Copy	Copies the selected text and stores it in the paste buffer. (Previous text in the paste buffer is cleared.)
4: Paste	Inserts the text stored in the paste buffer at the current location of the cursor.
5: Select All	Selects the entire current file for cut or copy.
6: Search	Searches a file for a character string.
7: Replace	Replaces a word with a different word or character string.
8: Goto Top	Brings the cursor to the top line of the current file.
9: Goto Bottom	Brings the cursor to last line of the current file.
0: Goto Line	Moves the cursor to the desired line in the current file.
A: Change Text	Switches between the display window 1 and 2.

Function key [F3]: Operate menu

The Operate menu mainly controls transmitting and receiving.

```
┌──────────────── Operate ────────────────┐
│                                           │
│  1: Call Station                          │
│  2: Macro Operation                       │
│  ---------------------------------------  │
│  3: File to Send                          │
│  4: Cancel Sending                        │
│  ---------------------------------------  │
│  5: Scan (Start/Stop)                     │
│   --------------------------------------  │
│  6: Manual Reception                      │
│  ---------------------------------------  │
│  7: Timer Operation                       │
│  ---------------------------------------  │
│  8: Manual Calling                        │
│  9: Set Frequency                         │
│                                           │
└───────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
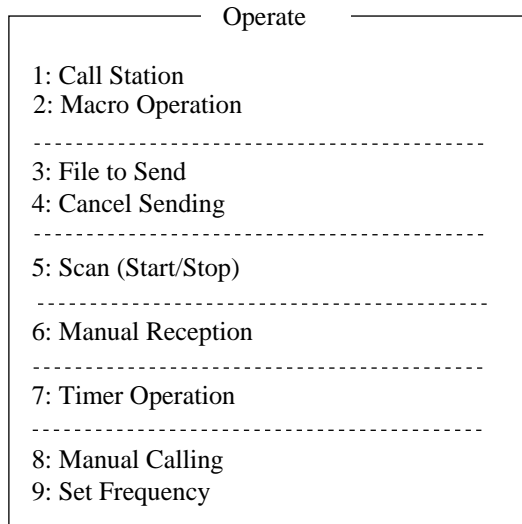
Operate menu

1: Call Station	Chooses a station from the station list.
2: Macro Operation	Enables macro operation. For details, see paragraph 10.10.
3: File to Send	Selects a file (to transmit).
4: Cancel Sending	Stops sending a file.
5: Scan Start/Stop	Starts/stops frequency scanning.
6: Manual Reception	Selects communication mode for reception; AUTO, ARQ, FEC DIRC.
7: Timer Operation	Timer programming.
8: Manual Calling	Sets TX mode and subscriber's ID number in manual calling.
9: Set Frequency	Sets TX and RX frequencies in manual calling.

<u>Function key [F4]: Window menu</u>

The Window menu lets you display the corresponding data of the window below.

```
┌─────────── Window ───────────┐
│                               │
│ 1: Calendar                   │
│ -----------------------------------------
│ 2: Distress Frequency Table   │
└───────────────────────────────┘
```

Window menu

1: Calendar   Displays desired calendar month and year. To change year or month, choose item with ↑ or ↓ key and change setting with ← or → key.

2: Distress Frequency Table   Displays all distress frequencies.

```
┌──────────────── Distress Frequencies ────────────────┐
│ Telephone (kHz): 2182.0  4125.0  6215.0  8291.0  12290.0  16420.0 │
│ ------------------------------------------------------------------------- │
│ NBDP     (kHz) : 2174.5  4177.5  6268.0  8376.5  12520.0  16695.0 │
│ ------------------------------------------------------------------------- │
│ DSC      (kHz) : 2187.5  4207.5  6312.0  8414.5  12577.0  16804.5 │
└──────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

7-9

Function key [F5]: Station menu

The Station menu provides for storage of stations, timer program setup, user channel setup, and entry of various ID codes.

```
┌──────────── Station ────────────┐
│                                  │
│ 1: Station Entry                 │
│ --------------------------------│
│ 2: Timer Operation Entry         │
│ --------------------------------│
│ 3: Scan Entry                    │
│ --------------------------------│
│ 4: User Channel Entry            │
│ --------------------------------│
│ 5: Answerback Code Entry         │
│ --------------------------------│
│ 6: Group ID Entry (4/5 digit)    │
│ 7: Group ID Entry (9 digit)      │
│ 8: Select ID Entry (4/5 digit)   │
│ 9: Select ID Entry (9 digit)     │
│                                  │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```
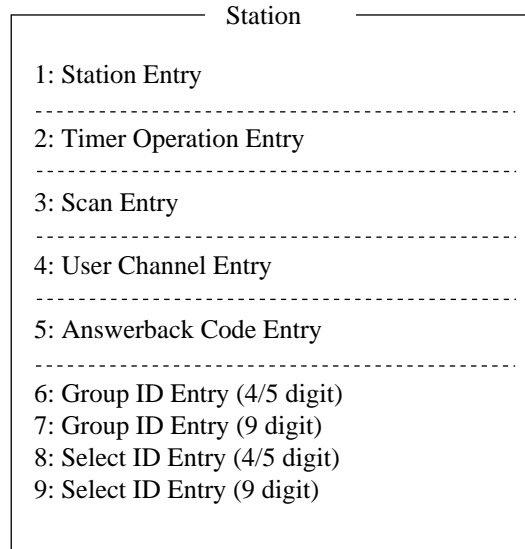
Station menu

1: Station Entry	Registers stations.
2: Timer Operation Entry	Registers timer programs.
3: Scan Entry	Creates scan groups for scanning.
4: User Channel Entry	Registers user channels.
5: Answerback Code Entry	Registers own ship's answerback code.
6: Group ID Entry	Registers own ship's group ID codes (4 or 5 digit).
7: Group ID Entry	Registers own ship's group ID codes (9 digit).
8: Select ID Entry	Registers own ship's selective ID codes (4 or 5 digit).
9: Select ID Entry	Registers own ship's selective ID codes (9 digit).

Function key [F6]: System menu

The System menu is mainly for use by technicians and contains diagnostic tests. To change settings, choose "Change" from the item "Setup" and operate arrow keys to choose item and option. Press the **Enter** key to register selection and close the menu.

```
┌─────────────── System ───────────────┐
│ Setup                    Lock Change  Default          │
│ ------------------------------------------------------ │
│ Slave Delay              8 msec (0- 50 msec)           │
│ ------------------------------------------------------ │
│ TX/RX MSG Save           OFF O N                       │
│ Edit Before sending      OFF O N                       │
│ ------------------------------------------------------ │
│ Time System              OFF UTC SMT JST               │
│ Time & Date              2002/10/16  10:00:00          │
│ Window Color*                                          │
│ Self Test                                              │
└────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

*: Display mode" shown on IB-581

System menu

Setup	Locks, changes settings; restores default system settings.
Slave Delay	Sets the length of the slave delay timing from the end of RX to the start of TX in the ARQ mode. The default setting is suitable in most cases. This item cannot be adjusted by the user.
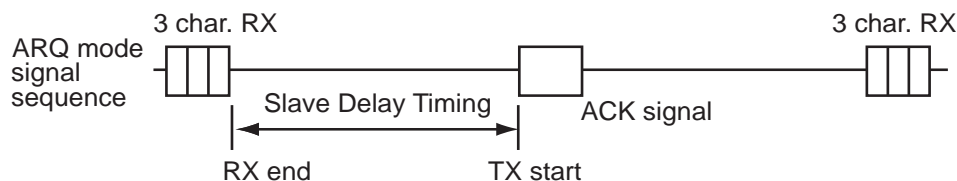
TX/RX MSG Save	Turn on to automatically save incoming and outgoing messages to a floppy disk. "Log" appears at the top of the screen when on.
Edit Before sending	"OFF" transmits keying operation one by one. "ON" transmits message only when the **Enter** key is pressed after confirming text typed.
Time System	Chooses time system. UTC: Coordinated universal time SMT: Local time JST: Japan standard time.
Time & Date	Enter date and time manually. If a navigation device is connected, the time is automatically set when the power is turned on or whenever the time system is switched. Manual entry takes priority over automatic entry. This item cannot be adjusted when using JST or UTC.

Window Color (IB-583) Chooses display colors. To change display colors:

1. Choose the option Change from Setup.
2. Press the ↓ key to choose Window Color and press the **Enter** key.

```
┌──── Window Color Change ────┐
│ Window Color Setup          │
│ Default Color               │
│ - - - - - - - - - - - - - - │
│ To Change: ENTER  To quit: ESC │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

3. The cursor is choosing Window Color Setup; press the **Enter** key.

```
┌──── Window Color Setup ────┐
│ Window      : [BASE WINDOW  ] │
│ Fore Color  : [L-WHITE       ] │
│ Back Color  : [BLUE          ] │
│ - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - │
│ To Change: ENTER   To Change Value: L<=>R │
└────────────────────────────┘
```

4. Press the → key to choose the item to change: BASE WINDOW, BACK SCROLL, EDIT 1-2, FUNCTION, SUB MENU 1-3, MESSAGE.
5. Press the ↓ key to choose Fore Color.
6. Press the → key to choose color: L-WHITE, BLACK, BLUE, GREEN, CYAN, RED, MAGENTA, BROWN, WHITE, GRAY, L-BLUE, L-GREEN, L-CYAN, L-RED, L-MAGENTA, YELLOW.
7. Press the ↓ key to choose Back Color.
8. Press the → key to choose color.
9. Press the ↑ key to choose Window.
10. Repeat the step 4 to 9 to set other colors.
11. Press the **Enter** key followed by the **Esc** key.

Display Mode (IB-581) Selects display mode to normal and reverse alternately.

Self Test: Starts diagnostic test.

Function key [F7]: WRU (Who Are You?): In the ARQ mode, requests other station's answerback code.

Function key [F8]: HR (Here Is): In the ARQ mode, sends your ship's answerback code.

Function key [F9]: OVER: In the ARQ mode, switches the direction of traffic; the information receiving station becomes the information sending station, the information sending station becomes the information receiving station.

Function key [F10]: Break: Disconnects the line.

8. NBDP PREPARATIONS

This chapter provides the procedures necessary for preparing the NBDP Terminal Unit for transmitting and receiving. For automatic telex, you will need to register the following:

- Your ship's ID and answerback codes
- Stations
- Timer programs
- Scan channel groups
- User channels

8.1 Registering Answerback Code & ID Codes

Enter your ship's answerback code and ID codes as shown below.

Note: The answerback and ID codes cannot be changed once entered; be sure to enter the codes correctly.

8.1.1 Registering answerback code

1. Press the function key **F5** and then the **5** key. The display should look something like the illustration below.

```
         ┌─── Answerback Code Entry ───┐
         │ Answerback Code             │
         │                             │
         │ █                           │
         │                             │
         │                             │
         │                             │
         └─────────────────────────────┘
```
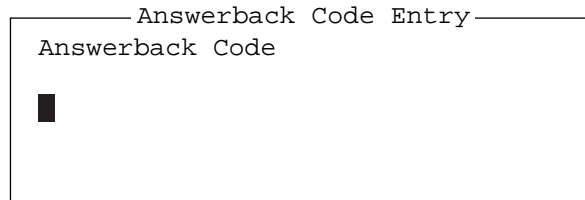
Answerback code entry screen

2. Enter your ship's answerback code (max. 20 characters, including spaces) and press the **Enter** key. The prompt "OK/Cancel" asks for verification of data. If the code is correct, press the **Enter** key again.

   Note: Example of answerback code: 123456789 FURU X.

For final verification of the data, the Caution shown in the illustration below appears.

```
┌─────── Answerback Code Entry ───────┐
│ Answerback Code                      │
│                          ┌─────────┐ │
│                          │  O  K   │ │
│ 123456789 FURU X         │         │ │
│                          │ Cancel  │ │
│                          └─────────┘ │
│                                      │
└──────────────────────────────────────┘
```

```
┌──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Caution                                                    │
│ Confirm the 'CODE' before pressing ENTER key.              │
│ You cannot change the CODE once it has been entered.       │
└──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

Message for confirmation of code entered

3. If the code is correct, press the **Enter** key again.

8.1.2 Registering ID codes

1. Press function key **F5** and then the **6**, **7**, **8** or **9** key to enter the Group ID Code (4 or 5 digits), Group ID Code (9 digits), Select ID Code (4 or 5 digits) or Select ID Code (9 digits), respectively.

```
┌─────── Select ID Entry ───────┐
│ Select ID Code (4/5)           │
│                                │
│ ■                              │
│                                │
│                                │
└────────────────────────────────┘
```

ID code entry screen

2. Enter Group ID or Select ID as appropriate and then press the **Enter** key. A prompt asks you to verify data. If the ID is correct, press the **Enter** key.

For final verification of the data, the Caution shown in the illustration below appears.

```
┌─────── Select ID Entry ───────┐
│ Select ID Code (4/5)           │
│ 12345          ┌─────────┐     │
│                │  O  K   │     │
│                │         │     │
│                │ Cancel  │     │
│                └─────────┘     │
└────────────────────────────────┘
```

```
┌──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Caution                                                    │
│ Confirm the 'CODE' before pressing ENTER key.              │
│ You cannot change the CODE once it has been entered.       │
└──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

Message for confirmation of code entered

3. If the ID is correct, press the **Enter** key again.

8.2   Station List

The station list provides for storage of up to 50 stations, one frequency pair (RX and TX) per station. For stations which have more than one frequency pair, you might add a suffix to the station name to denote multiple frequency pairs. For example, station name FURUNO followed by –1, -2, -3, etc. for each frequency pair required.

8.2.1   Registering stations

1. Press the function key **F5** followed by the **1** key to show the Station Entry screen.

```
                    ┌─ Station Entry ─┐
           ┌─ Station List ─┐
                                    ┌──────────┐
                                    │ Create   │
                                    │ Change   │
                                    └──────────┘


           ┌─────── Station Set Up ───────┐
           │ Station  : █                 │
           │ ID Code  :                   │
           │ Mode     : ARQ FEC           │
           │ CH/Table : Channel ScanTable │
           │ Num/Table:                   │
           └──────────────────────────────┘
```

Station entry screen

On the right-hand side of the screen, Create and Change are shown.

2. Create should be underlined. If it is not, underline it by pressing →, ↑ and the **Enter** key.
3. The cursor is now choosing Station. Enter station name, using up to 18 characters.
4. Press the ↓ key to choose ID Code. Enter station ID code.
5. Press the ↓ key to choose Mode. Choose communication mode with ← or → among the following:
   ARQ: Automatic Retransmission Request
   FEC: Forward Error Correction
6. Press the ↓ key to choose CH/Table. Choose Channel or ScanTable as appropriate.
7. Press the ↓ key to choose Num/Table.

8. If you selected "Channel" at step 6, enter ITU channel number (see Appendix) or User channel number.

9. If you selected "ScanTable" at step 6, press the → key to show scan group list registered. For scan group, refer to paragraph 8.5.

10. Choose a scan group name by using the ↓ or ↑ key followed by pressing the **Enter** key.

```
┌──── Scanning Group List ────┐
│                             │
│  ▌INTREPID▐                 │
│                             │
│   VOYAGER                   │
│ ▼ GLOBAL                    │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

Scanning group list

11. Press the **Enter** key. The prompt OK/Cancel asks for verification of data.

```
┌───────────┐
│  ▌O  K▐   │
│           │
│  Cancel   │
└───────────┘
```

OK/Cancel prompt

12. If the data are correct, press the **Enter** key. (To cancel entry, place the cursor on Cancel by pressing the ↓ key, and then hit the **Enter** key. Data entered are erased.) The station name entered at step 3 appears at the Station List window.

13. To register other stations, press the **Enter** key twice and then repeat steps 3 through 10.

14. Press the ↓ key. Check data on the Station List for correctness. Stations displayed in reverse video on the Station List are displayed on Station Set Up.

15. Press the **ESC** key to quit.

> **Note 1:** If you enter a station which already exists, the indication "Station by that name already exists. Press any key to escape." Appears. Press any key to return to the Station List. Check the list.
>
> **Note 2:** If you enter an invalid code, the message "Input Error. (ID Code) Press any key to escape." Appears. Press any key and reenter ID code.

8.2.2   Editing/Deleting stations

1. Press the function key **F5** and then the **1** key.
2. Press the ↓ key to choose a station name from the Station List.
3. Press the → key followed by ↓ key to choose Change and press the **Enter** key.
4. Do one of the following;

    Edit station: Use ↑, ↓ and the **Backspace** key to make corrections.

    Delete station: Erase station name with the **Backspace** key.

5. Press the **Enter** key twice.
6. Press the **Esc** key.

8.3 Timer Programming

A built-in timer allows you to automatically receive and transmit files. 10 timer programs can be registered. To enable timer operation, see section 10-6.

8.3.1 Registering timer programs

1. Press the function key **F5** and the **2** key to display the Timer Operation Entry screen.

```
┌──────────────── Timer Operation Entry ────────────────┐
│  ┌─ Timer Operation List ─┐                            │
│  │                        │          ┌──────────┐      │
│  │                        │          │ Create   │      │
│  │                        │          │ Change   │      │
│  │                        │          └──────────┘      │
│  │                        │                            │
│  └────────────────────────┘                            │
│           ┌──────── Timer Operation Set Up ──────────┐ │
│           │ ▐Operation▌  : █                          │ │
│           │  Station    ➡ :                           │ │
│           │  Start Time  :   0: 00: 00                │ │
│           │  Stop Time   :   0: 00: 00                │ │
│           │  Receive/Send : Receive Send              │ │
│           │  File to Send ➡ :                         │ │
│           └───────────────────────────────────────────┘ │
└────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

Press [→] to show station list, file list.
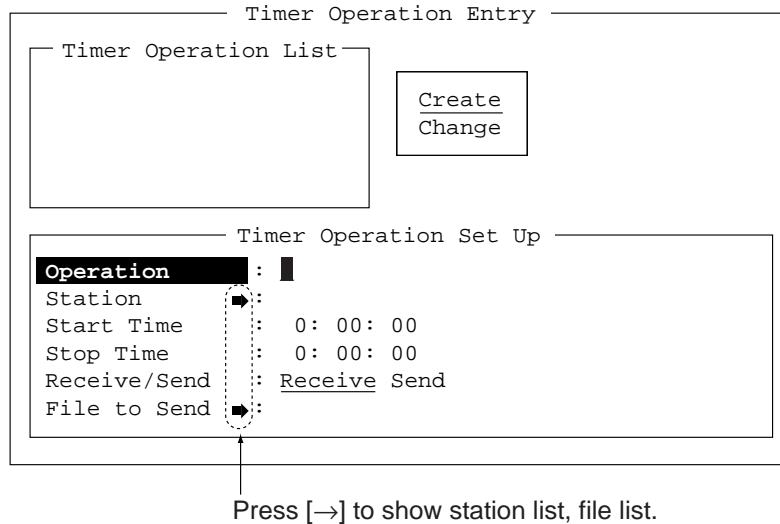
Timer operation entry screen

2. If Create is not underlined, press →, ↑ and the **Enter** key to underline it.
3. Operation is selected. Enter a suitable operation name on the Operation line. Any alphanumeric characters may be used.

> **Note:** If the operation name entered already exists, the display "Operation name already exists. Press any key to escape." Press any key and change the operation name.

4. Press the ↓ key to choose Station.
5. Press the → key to display the Station List (which you registered stations in the previous paragraph.)
6. Choose a station and press the **Enter** key.
7. Press the ↓ key to choose Start Time. Enter start time, in 24-hour notation. To have the operation start at 8:35 a. m., for example, the keying sequence would be;
   0 8 3 5 0 0
8. Press the ↓ key to choose Stop Time. Enter stop time, in 24-hour notation.
9. Press the ↓ key to choose Receive/Send. Choose operation category; Receive or Send. If you have chosen "Send," go to step 10. For "Receive," go to step 12.
10. For send, insert the floppy disk which you want to send in the floppy drive, press the ↓ key to choose File to Send.
11. Press the → key to display the TX window, choose a file, and press the **Enter** key twice.
12. Press the **Enter** key.
13. Press the **Enter** key. The operation name appears in the Timer Operation List.
14. To enter another timer program, press the **Enter** key twice and the repeat steps 3-11.
15. Press the **Esc** key to finish.

8.3.2   Editing/Deleting timer programs

1. Press the function key **F5** and the **2** key.
2. Choose a timer program name from the Timer Operation List.
3. Press the → key to choose Change and press the **Enter** key.
4. Do one of the following;

    Edit program: Use ↑, ↓ and the **Backspace** key to make corrections.

    Delete program: Erase operation name with the **Backspac**e key.

5. Press the **Enter** key twice.
6. Press the **Esc** key.

8.4   User Channels

The user channel list provides storage for up to 100 user channels, numbered 0-99. Note that user channels may be used in channel scanning.

8.4.1   Registering user channels

1. Press the function key **F5** and then the **4** key to show the User Channel Entry screen.
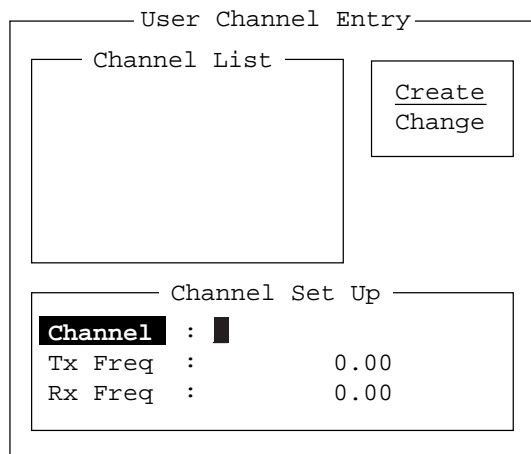
User channel entry screen

2. If Create is not underlined, press →, ↑ and the **Enter** key to underline it.
3. Channel is selected. Enter channel number.
    Note 1: 100 channels may be registered. When you attempt to register more, the message "Channel memory is full. Press any key to escape." Appears. In this case delete unnecessary channels to register new ones.)
    Note 2: If the channel entered already exists, the message "Channel by that number already exists. Press any key to escape." Appears. Press any key and then reenter number.
4. Press the ↓ key to choose "Tx Freq." Enter TX frequency.
5. Press the ↓ key to choose "Rx Freq." Enter RX frequency.
6. Press the Enter key. The "OK/Cancel" confirmation window appears.
7. Press the **Enter** key. Channel number entered appears in the Channel List.
8. To quit, press the **Esc** key.

8.4.2 Editing/Deleting user channels

1. Press function key **F5** and then the **4** key.
2. Press the ↑ or ↓ key to choose channel from the Channel List.
3. Press ↓ and → keys to choose Change and press the **Enter** key.
4. Do one of the following:

   Edit channel: Use ↑, ↓ and the **Backspace** key to make modifications.

   Delete channel: Erase channel number with the **Backspace** key.

5. Press the **Enter** key twice.
6. Press the **Esc** key.

8.5 Scan Channel Groups

You may store up to 10 scan groups, 20 channels per group. Note that scanning is only possible in the ARQ and FEC modes.

The NBDP Terminal Unit can control radio equipment through channel scanning. In FEC mode, the radio equipment scans a number of channels (according to your selection), stopping when an incoming signal is found. In the ARQ mode it stops when your own ID code is detected in an incoming signal. Also, in the ARQ mode, the transmitter is then tuned to the corresponding transmitter frequency, the communication link is established and the traffic is automatically exchanged. Scanning resumes once the link is disconnected.

8.5.1 Registering scan channel groups

You may register ITU and user scan channels as follows:

1. Press the function key **F5** followed by the **3** key to display the Scan Entry screen.

```
┌─────────────────────── Scan Entry ───────────────────────┐
│ ┌─ Scanning Group List ─┐                                 │
│ │                       │   ┌──────────┐                  │
│ │                       │   │ Create   │                  │
│ │                       │   │ Change   │                  │
│ │                       │   └──────────┘                  │
│ │                       │                                 │
│ └───────────────────────┘                                 │
│ ┌──────────────────── Scanning Set Up ───────────────────┐│
│ │ Group Name      :                                       ││
│ │ Ch Dwell Time   : 4.5 sec (2.7-4.5 sec)                 ││
│ │ Mode            : AUTO ARQ FEC                          ││
│ │ Auto Search     : OFF ON                                ││
│ │ --------------------------------------------------------││
│ │ No    Channel    Rx Freq    Tx Freq    Pass/Scan        ││
│ │  0                                      Pass/Scan        ││
│ │  1                                      Pass/Scan        ││
│ │  2                                      Pass/Scan        ││
│ │  3                                      Pass/Scan        ││
│ │  4                                      Pass/Scan        ││
│ │▼ 5                                                       ││
│ └─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘│
└───────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

Scan entry screen

2. If Create is not underlined, press →, ↓ and the **Enter** key to underline it.
3. Group Name is selected. Enter suitable group name. (10 group names may be entered. If you attempt to enter more the message "Scan group memory is full. Press any key to escape." Appears. Press any key and then delete unnecessary group names to enter

new ones. If the group name already exists, the message "Scan group by that name already exists. Press any key to escape." Appears. Press any key and change the scan group name.)

4. Press the ↓ key to choose Ch Dwell Time. Enter channel dwell time in seconds. Dwell time is the time in seconds the receiver waits on each channel in a scan group before it selects the next frequency.

5. Press the ↓ key to choose Mode, and then choose the communication mode; AUTO, ARQ or FEC.

   Note: AUTO is used to register scanning channel group when both ARQ and FEC exist in the same Scanning Channel Group. When you choose scan group by the call station menu, set Mode to FEC. See paragraph 10.3.

6. Press the ↓ key to choose Auto Search. Choose Auto Search to ON or OFF.

   Auto Search ON: The radio stops scanning when it finds the strongest signal (highest S/N ratio). To find the strongest signal, the radio scans all channels, which may take some time. Therefore, use this setting where signal propagation is poor.

   Auto Search OFF: The radio stops scanning on the first signal it finds. We recommend that you set Auto Search to OFF when signal propagation is good.

7. Press the ↓ key to choose line no. 1 in the Scanning Set Up window.

8. Enter channel number (ITU or user channels) and press the → key to choose "Scan." (If you enter an invalid channel, the message " Channel by that number does not exist. Press any key to escape." Appears. Press any key and reenter channel.)

9. Press the ↓ key to choose line No. 2. Enter channel number.

10. Enter other channel numbers and then press the **Enter** key. A confirmation message appears.

11. Press the **Enter** key again to save the data. The group name is displayed in the Scanning Group List window.

12. To continue, press the **Enter** key twice and then repeat steps 3-10.

13. Press the **Esc** key to quit.

8.5.2   Editing/Deleting scan channel groups

1. Press the function key **F5** and the **3** key.

2. Choose scan group name from the Scanning Group List.

3. Press the → key to choose Change and press the **Enter** key.

4. Press the ↓ key to place the cursor on the field (channel) to change.

5. Do one of the following:

   Editing channels: Press the Backspace key to delete the channel number and then enter new channel number.

   Adding channels: Enter channel number on a blank line.

   Deleting scan group: Delete group name with the **Backspace** key.

   Disabling channels temporarily: Press the ← key to underline Pass.

6. Press the **Enter** key twice.

7. Press the **ESC** key.

9. NBDP FILE OPERATIONS

This chapter mainly describes how to create, save, open, edit and print files. The Edit menu provides a full lineup of editing facilities, including search and replace.

9.1 Opening and Closing Files

To create a telex message you will need to make a new file, which you do with the File Open command. When you open a new file it is placed (opened) in one of two working areas. When both working areas are occupied you must close a file to open a new file. This is done with the File Close command.
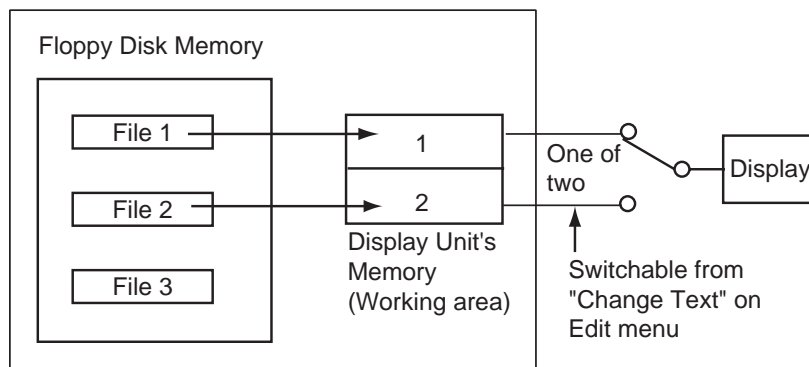
How a file is opened

9.2 Creating Files

1. Press the function key **F1** to display the File menu.

File menu

2. Press the **1** key to choose New. The title bar shows UNTITLED 1 or UNTITLED 2. The cursor marks the location where you may type text.
3. Type your message.

Note: Do not use lower case letters, or the symbols #, &, *, $ and % in telex messages. Also, do not put "$$$" in the middle of a TX message, but at the end. The communication line is automatically disconnected when this string is detected.

9.3   Saving a File

Use only 2HD type floppy disks. Insert floppy disk with care. Rough handling can destroy the information stored inside. To eject a disk, press the eject button on the right side of the floppy disk drive and then remove the disk. Do not eject a disk while the operating lamp is lit; the contents of the disk may become damaged.

Hole opened: Write protect

Write-protect Tab

Write-Protect Tab
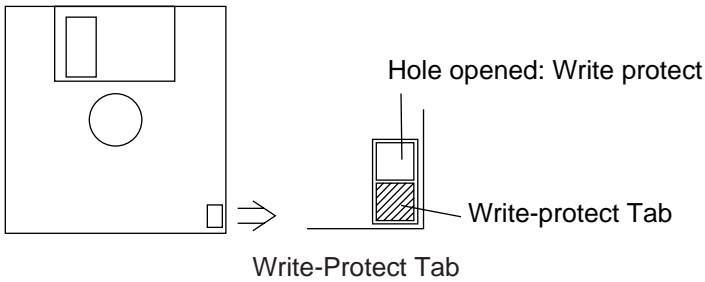
9.3.1   Formatting floppy disks

Before you can save a file to a floppy disk, the disk must be formatted. Formatting prepares the disk for use in the system.

1. Press function key **F1**, and insert a new floppy disk in the disk drive.
2. Press the 0 key to choose Floppy Disk Format.
3. Press the ↑ key to choose Yes.
4. Press the **Enter** key. For the IB-581, insert a new floppy disk in the drive
5. Press the **Enter** key. For the IB-583, the screen shows formatting progress as below.

Floppy Disk Format
9%

6. After formatting has been completed, the following occurs;
   IB-581: You are asked "Format another (Y/N)?" Press **N** and **Enter** to quite.
   IB-583: Control is returned to the standby screen.

9.3.2   Saving a file

1. Press the function key **F1** to display the File menu.
2. Press the **3** key. The screen should look something like the illustration at right.

```
┌──────── Close Text ────────┐
│                            │
│  Save file ?      ┌──────┐ │
│                   │ Yes  │ │
│                   │      │ │
│  ( UNTITLED1   )  │  No  │ │
│                   └──────┘ │
│                            │
└────────────────────────────┘
```
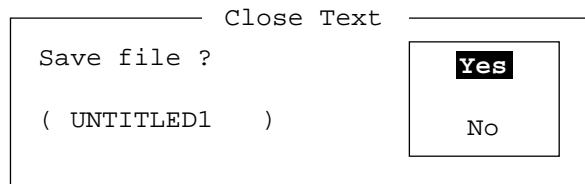
Close text screen

3. Yes is selected; press the **Enter** key.
4. Enter file name, using up to eight characters.

    You may use any alphabet or numeric on the keyboard. But you may not use the symbols shown below. You may add an extension at the end of the file name, for example, .TXT, to distinguish text files from macro files.

    | ¦ : " > < ;

5. Press the **Enter** key.

9.4   Editing Files

9.4.1   Cutting and pasting text

You can delete, move and copy text by using the Cut, Copy and Paste functions in the Edit menu.

```
┌──────────── Edit ────────────┐
│                              │
│  1: Undo                     │
│  ---------------------------- │
│  2: Cut                      │
│  3: Copy                     │
│  4: Paste                    │
│  ---------------------------- │
│  5: Select All               │
│  ---------------------------- │
│  6: Search                   │
│  7: Replace                  │
│  ---------------------------- │
│  8: Goto Top                 │
│  9: Goto Bottom              │
│  0: Goto Line                │
│  ---------------------------- │
│  A: Change Text              │
│                              │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```
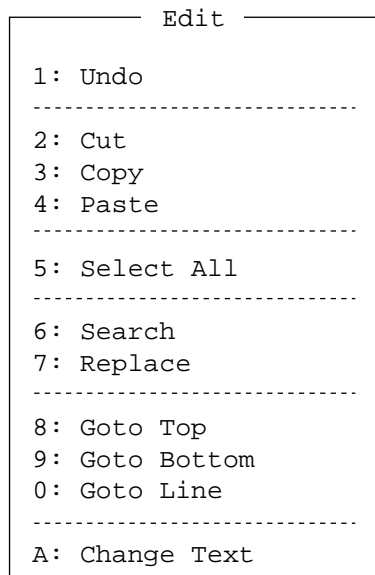
Edit menu

Cutting text

1. Place the cursor on the first character of the text to be cut.
2. Highlight the text to be cut by pressing and holding the **Shift** key while pressing the →. If you highlight text which you do not want to cut, press the ← to adjust the highlight.

```
┌─────────── <[1]UNTITLED1> ───────────┐
│                                        │
│ CONGULATULATION ON YOUR CHOICE OF DP-6 │
│ INMARSAT B MOBILE EARTH STATION.       │
│ WE ARE CONFIDENT THAT YOU WILL ENJOY MANY YEARS OF │
│ OPERATION WITH THIS FINE PIECE OF EQUIPMENT │
```
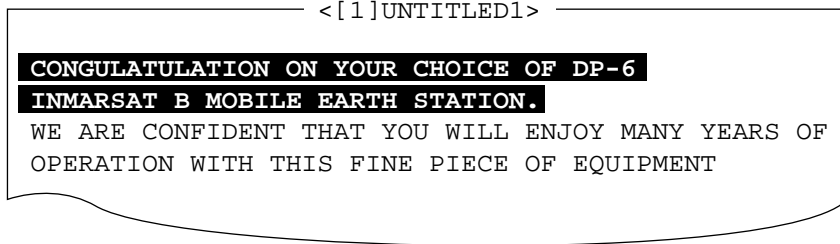
The highlight

3. Press the function key **F2** and the **2** key, or the **Delete** key. The highlighted text is cut and the remaining text is reformatted.

If you make a mistake, you can restore the text by immediately selecting Undo from the Edit menu.

Pasting text

To paste the cut text to a new location, do the following:

1. Place the cursor at the exact spot in the message where the cut text is to start.
2. Press the function key **F2** and the **4** key, or the **Insert** key.

9.4.2 Copying and pasting text

You may copy a portion of text and paste it elsewhere.

1. Choose the text to copy. (See "cutting text" above for the procedure.)
2. Press the function key **F2** and the **3** key.
   The text selected is copied to the paste buffer memory where the cut or copied text is stored. The display returns to the normal screen.
3. Place the cursor at the exact spot in the message where the copied text is to start.
4. Press the function key **F2** and the **4** key.

9.4.3 Select all

The Select All feature lets you select all of the file currently displayed. This feature can be useful when you want to combine files. The procedure below explains how to place the file loaded in working area 1 onto the end of the file loaded in working area 2.

1. Load the file to be copied from a floppy disk in working area 1.
2. Press the function key **F2** and the **5** key. The entire file appears in inverse video.
3. Press the function key **F2** and the **3** key. The file is placed in the paste buffer memory.
4. Load the file to be combined in working area 2.
5. Place the cursor at the exact spot in the message where the text now in the paste buffer memory is to start and press the Insert key.
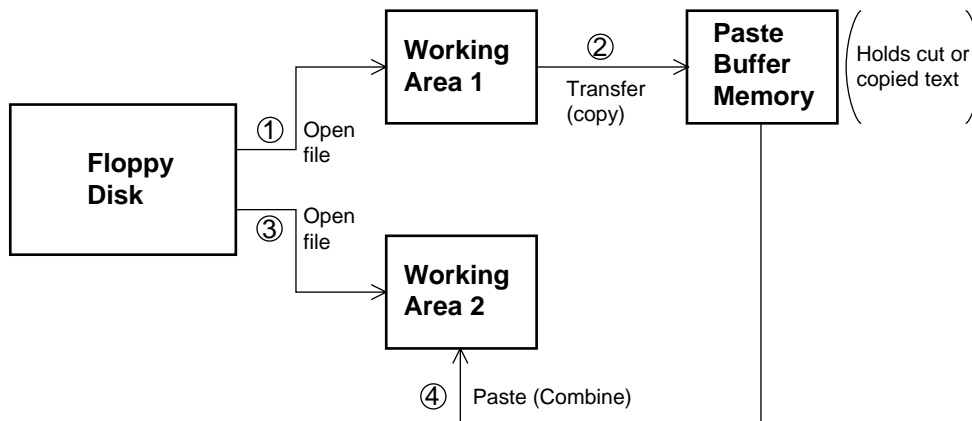
Copy and paste flow diagram

9.4.4 Searching text

The Search feature lets you search for text in a forward or backward direction.

1. Display a text and press the function key **F2** and the **6** key. The Search display appears.
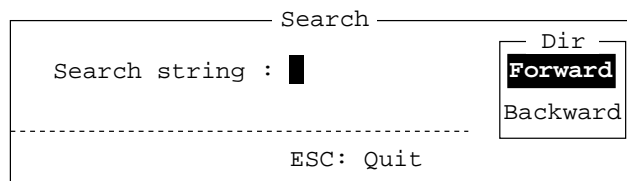
Search screen

2. Type the word you want to find. Press the → key. Use ↑ or ↓ to choose "Forward" or "Backward" to search the file in a forward or backward direction respectively from the cursor position. Press the **Enter** key to begin the search.

When the unit finds the word, the cursor stops at the first character of the word. Press the **Enter** key to continue the search. If the string could not be found, the message "Not Found (To quit: ESC)" appears. Press the **Esc** key to quit.

9.4.5　Replacing text

The Replace feature helps you replace every occurrence of a word or phase with another word or phase in a file.

1. Press the function key **F2** and the **7** key. The Replace display appears.

```
 ───────────────── Replace ──────── Dir ──── ── Mode ──
                                    ┌─────────┐ ┌──────────┐
Search string : █_____     │ Forward │ │  Query   │
Replace with  :                    │         │ │          │
--------------------------------   │ Backward│ │   All    │
                                    └─────────┘ └──────────┘
                 To quit: ESC
```

Replace screen

2. Type the word you want to replace on the "Search string" line.
3. Press the ↓ key to choose "Replace with." Type the new word.
4. Press the → key.
5. Use the ↑ or ↓ key to choose Forward or Backward to search the file in a forward or backward direction respectively from the cursor position.
6. Press the → key.
7. Use the ↑ or ↓ key to choose whether you want to be queried or not each time the word is found.

    Query: Stop at each occurrence of word to answer yes or no to replacement.

    All:　　Replace every occurrence of word without stopping to confirm.

8. Press the **Enter** key to start the replacement.

9.4.6　Goto line

The Goto line feature places the cursor at the head of a line desired.

1. Press the function key **F2** and the **0** key. The following display appears.

```
 ──────────────── Goto Line ────────────────

    Jump to Line No. : █____
```

Goto line screen

2. Key in line number and press the **Enter** key. The cursor shifts to the head of the line selected.

9.4.7　Goto top, Goto bottom

You can easily go to the top or bottom line of a file. Press **F2**, **8** to go to the top line; press **F2**, **9** to go to the bottom line. Note that this feature can also be executed on the editor screen by pressing the **Home** or **End** key while pressing the **Fn** key.

9.5   Opening Files

Two working areas (called working area 1 and working area 2) are provided to which you can load a file, and one file may be displayed on the LCD.

9.5.1   Opening a file

1. Insert the floppy disk which contains the file you want to open.
2. Press the function key **F1** to display the File menu.
3. Press the **2** key. A chronological list of files on the floppy disk appears.

```
                     ─── Open Text ───
 Load/Merge(TAB:Change)
 [A:\TEST1.                          ]
 ──────File name────────── Size ───── Date & Time ─────────────
 LOG File               52      02-10-15 17:25
 TEST1.                120      02-10-15 16:30
 TEST2.                151      02-10-15  9:25
 TEST3.                180      02-10-15 20:16
 NBDP                  169      02-10-15  6:23
 [──────────────────── End of Directory ───────────────────── ]



 4 Files exist                    1454000 bytes free
 ─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────
 To select : ENTER   To view : SPACE   To quit : ESC
```

4. Use the ↑ or ↓ key to choose a file.
5. Press the **Enter** key.

The file appears and the title bar shows the file name. You may repeat this procedure to load another file into a working area.

Note: When two working areas have been opened, the close confirmation window appears. In this case, choose Yes or No and press the **Enter** key to close an open file in order to open another file.

9.5.2   Switching between files

Two files can be opened and one displayed on the LCD. To switch between files do the following:

1. Press the function key **F2**.
2. Press the **A** key to switch between files.

9.6   Renaming Files

To rename a file, do the following:

1. Press the function key **F1**.
2. Press the **5** key.
3. Use the ↑ or ↓ key to choose a file and press the **Enter** key.

4. Enter a new name.
5. Press the **Enter** key.

9.7   Saving a File Under a New Name

You may save a file under a new name as follows:

1. Open a file.
2. Edit the file as necessary.
3. Press the function key **F1**.
4. Press the **3** key to save the file.
5. Press the **Y** key.
6. Press the **Backspace** key to erase the original name and then enter a new name.
7. Press the **Enter** key.

9.8   Deleting Files

Insert appropriate floppy disk in the drive and do the following to delete unnecessary files.

1. Press the function key **F1**.
2. Press the **4** key.
3. Use the ↑ or ↓ key to choose the file to delete and then press the **Enter** key.
4. Press the **Enter** key again. (To cancel, press the ↓ key to select NO followed by the **Enter** key.)

9.9   Real Time Printing

An incoming or outgoing message can be printed out while it is being received or transmitted.

1. Press the function key **F1** to display the File menu.
2. Press the **6** key to turn real time printing on/off.

When the real time printing is on, "Print" appears in reverse video at the top of the display.

9.10   Printing Files

You can print files stored on floppy disks as follows:

1. Press the function key **F1**.
2. Press the **7** key.
3. Use the ↑ or ↓ key to choose a file and press the **Enter** key.
4. Press the **Y** key.

To stop printing at any time, press **F1** and **8** keys.
If the file could not be printed, "Cannot print. Check connection between printer and terminal. Press any key to escape." Is displayed.

10. NBDP TRANSMITTING, RECEIVING

This chapter mainly shows you how to transmit and receive telex messages.

10.1 Manual Calling

```
┌─────────────────────────────┐
│        NOTICE               │
├─────────────────────────────┤
│ Before calling, watch the intended TX │
│ frequency carefully to confirm that is │
│ unoccupied.                 │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

NOTICE

Before calling, watch the intended TX frequency carefully to confirm that is unoccupied.

The simplest way to communicate with a telex subscriber is Manual Calling. For the ARQ mode, you may display beforehand the message to send, or type your message manually.

1. Press the function key **F3** to display the Operate menu.

```
┌──────────── Operate ────────────┐
│                                  │
│ 1: Call Station                  │
│ 2: Macro Operation               │
│ -------------------------------- │
│ 3: File to Send                  │
│ 4: Cancel Sending                │
│ -------------------------------- │
│ 5: Scan (Start/Stop)             │
│ -------------------------------- │
│ 6: Manual Reception              │
│ -------------------------------- │
│ 7: Timer Operation               │
│ -------------------------------- │
│ 8: Manual Calling                │
│ 9: Set Frequency                 │
│                                  │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```

Operate menu

2. Press the **9** key to choose Set Frequency.

```
┌──── Set Frequency ────┐
│ Tx Freq:      0.00    │
│ RX Freq:      0.00    │
└───────────────────────┘
```

Set frequency screen

3. Input Tx and Rx frequency pair.
4. Press the **Enter** key.

5. Press the function key **F3** again and then the **8** key to choose Manual Calling. The following screen appears.

```
┌──── Manual Calling ────┐
│ Mode : ARQ FEC         │
│ ID   :                 │
└────────────────────────┘
```

Manual calling screen

6. Use the ← or → key to choose appropriate communication mode.
7. Press the ↓ key and input party's ID number.
8. Press the **Enter** key to connect the communication line. "Channel Busy Check" appears. If the line is free, "Connect", "Send" and "Lock" appear in highlight as below. Further, "HT" (High Tension) also appears when the line is connected.

```
1:File 2:Edit 3:Operate 4:Window 5:Station 6:System 7:WRU 8:HR 9:Over 10:Break
------------------------------------------------- 2002-09-08 2:14:28 UTC ------Caps-Eng
 Station Name     :                                              HT
 Frequency (T/R) :    8765.00 / 8965.00(kHz)   Comm Mode :ARQ
 Comm Status      :  Connect  Send  Lock  Error
 Sending Volume   :  100(%)    ARQ Error : 0    ARQ Time : 0(sec)
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

For ARQ mode, go to step 9. For FEC mode, type your message and go to step 13.

9. Press the function key **F7** (WRU). The party's answerback code appears on the screen.

    Note: Step 9 and 10 are needed for ship-to-ship calling only.

10. Press the function key **F8** (HR). Your ship's answerback code is sent to the party.
11. Press the **Enter** key and type your message.
12. If you want to receive other party's response, press the function key **F9** (Over).
13. Press the function key **F10** (Break) to disconnect the line.

10.2   ARQ Mode Operation

In ARQ operation, one station (information sending station) sends data to another block by block, then listens for the acknowledge signal between blocks from the information receiving station which requests either the next block or retransmission of the last block if there is error. The request may be repeated up to 32 times, until the complete block is received free of error.

<u>Establishing connection</u>

1. Press the function key **F3** to display the Operate menu.

```
┌──────────────── Operate ────────────────┐
│                                          │
│  1: Call Station                         │
│  2: Macro Operation                      │
│  ------------------------------------    │
│  3: File to Send                         │
│  4: Cancel Sending                       │
│  ------------------------------------    │
│  5: Scan (Start/Stop)                    │
│   -----------------------------------    │
│  6: Manual Reception                     │
│  ------------------------------------    │
│  7: Timer Operation                      │
│  ------------------------------------    │
│  8: Manual Calling                       │
│  9: Set Frequency                        │
│                                          │
└──────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Press the **1** key to choose Call Station.

```
 1:File 2:Edit  3:Operate  4:Window 5:Station 6:System 7:WRU 8:HR 9:Over 10:Break
---------------------------------------------------2002-01-15 14:41:09 UTC ---- Caps-Eng
 Station Name    :  CHOUSHI-8M
 Frequen┌─────────────────── Call Station ───────────────────┐
 Comm St│ ┌──── Station List ────┐ ┌───── Station Setup ─────┐│
 Sending│ │ ABC-4M               │ │ Station  : ABC-4M        ││
--------│ │ ABC-6M               │ │ ID Code  : 45678         ││ ----------------
        │ │ ABC-12M              │ │ Mode     : ARQ FEC       ││
        │ │ ABC-8M               │ │ CH/Table : Channel Scantable ││
        │ │ FURUNO               │ │ Num/Table:               ││
        │ └──────────────────────┘ └─────────────────────────┘│
        └─────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

Call Station menu

3. Choose a station. (Station must be registered for use in the ARQ mode). Press the **Enter** key. The message "Calling Station" appears. If the message shown below appears, check both the power of the radiotelephone and the connections between the radiotelephone and the NBDP Terminal Unit.

    "Station calling suspended. Check interconnections between the terminal and main units. Press any key to escape."

4. When an acknowledge signal is detected, "Connect" appears in reverse video on the communication status display.

Note: If signal conditions are poor, connection may take a while. If the line could not be connected in one minute, calling stops and "Calling failed" appears. Try step 3 again, one minute later. Should signal conditions worsen during message transmission, "Error" appears in reverse video and 30 seconds later the line is disconnected.

5. Transmit message by one of the following methods:

Sending a file stored on a floppy disk

1. Press the function key **F7** (WRU) to receive the answerback code of the other station. Verify that the code from the station called is correct.
2. Press the function key **F8** (HR) to transmit your own identity (answerback code).
3. Press the function key **F3** and then the **3** key to display the Send file screen.
4. Choose file to send and press the **Enter** key.
5. Press the **Enter** key again.

```
┌──────────────────── Send File ────────┐
│ [A:\TEST1.                          ]  │
│------File name----------Size-----Date & Time----------------│
│ LOG File          52     02-10-15 17:25                     │
│ TEST1.            120    02-10-10 16:30                      │
│ TEST2.            151    02-10-11 09:25                      │
│ TEST3.            180    02-10-11 20:16                      │
│ NBDP              169    02-10-12 06:23                      │
│ [-------------------- End of Directory -----------------------] │
│                                                             │
│                                                             │
│ 4 Files exist                    1454000 bytes free         │
│-------------------------------------------------------------│
│ To select : ENTER   To view : SPACE   To quit : ESC         │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

Send file screen

Sending volume (percentage of message transmitted, counts upward as the message is being transmitted), ARQ error count and ARQ transmission time appear on the display. "Lock" appears in reverse video when the mark and space signals in the receive signal are normal. "ARQ Error" shows the number of times error was found during transmission. "ARQ Time" is the time in seconds the communication line has been established.

```
1:File 2:Edit 3:Operate 4:Window 5:Station 6:System 7:WRU 8:HR 9:Over 10:Break
------------------------------------------- 2002-09-08 2:14:28 UTC ------Caps-Eng
  Station Name    :                                    HT
  Frequency (T/R) :   8765.00 / 8965.00(kHz)  Comm Mode :ARQ
  Comm Status     : Connect  Send  Lock  Error
  Sending Volume  : 100(%)    ARQ Error : 0    ARQ Time : 0(sec)
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Communication status display

6. After the message is transmitted, press the function key **F10** (Break) to disconnect the line.

Type a message from the keyboard

1. After exchanging answerback code by the function key **F7** (WRU) and **F8** (HR), type your message directly from the keyboard.
2. To change direction of traffic, press the function key **F9** (OVER), or **+**, **?** in order. Then, the other station becomes the information sending station, your station becomes the

information receiving station.
3. Receive a message from the sending station.
4. After completion of communication, press the function key **F7** (WRU) key to receive the answerback code of the other station and then press the function key **F8** (HR) to transmit your own answerback code.
5. Press the function key **F10** (Break) to disconnect the line.

Stopping transmission

1. Press the function key **F3** and then the **4** key. "Canceled Sending" appears on the screen. Transmission is stopped but the line is still connected.
2. To disconnect the line, press the **F10** key.

10.3 FEC Mode Operation

The FEC mode transmits the same data twice to yield less errors. Compared to the ARQ mode, the FEC mode is better at communicating with weak signals.

1. Press the function key **F3**.
2. Press the **1** key to display the Call Station menu.
3. Choose a station which is registered for the FEC mode.
4. Press the **Enter** key. "CONNECT" appears in reverse video.
5. Transmit a message directly from the keyboard, or do the following to transmit a message stored on a floppy disk:

   Press the function key **F3** and the **1** key to choose File to Send. Choose file to send and then press the **Enter** key.
6. After the message is transmitted, press the function key **F10** (Break) to disconnect the line.

10.4 Choosing Receive Mode

1. Press the function key **F3** and then the **6** key.
2. Choose receive mode:
   AUTO: Automatic reception in ARQ or FEC mode
   ARQ: International radiotelex ARQ mode
   FEC: International radiotelex FEC mode
   DIRC: Receive message from teleprinter

3. Press the **Enter** key. The reception mode appears on the screen.

All received (and transmitted) messages are saved to a floppy disk when "TX/RX MSG Save" is ON in the System menu. The file is automatically named as follows.

$$\underline{02}\ \underline{01}\ \underline{13}\ 0\ 0.\ X\ X\ X$$

Year month date   Serial number from 000

10.5 Communication Example

Call the coast station following the procedure in paragraph 10.2. Then, communicate with the coast station. Below is a communication example.

Call completed,
connected with
coast station

To send message
to ship

```
12345 KOBE X ----------------------- Own answerback code
```

Selcall No.   Ship name or call sign

```
1480 HKRDO VRX
MOM                      ----------------
GA+?
```
Automatically sent from Coast
station (ex. Hong Kong)

```
OPR+ --------------------------------
```
Type at your side within 30 s.
(Call operator manually.)

```
MOM
1480 HKRDO VRX
12345 KOBE X
KOBE DE HKRDO GOOD MORNING
NW  NIL  QRV  GA+?
```
Message from coast station
(Wait. From HKRDO to KOBE.
Nothing to send. Do you
have anything to send?)

If this is your first communications with a particular coast station, the coast station asks for you selcall no. ship name, call sign and AAIC (your enterprises name for which to charge to charge toll call. That registers you with the coast station. Thereafter, if your answerback code is correct automatic transmission is possible.

```
GM  NW   QTC1+? --------------------
```
Type at your side
(GM=Good Morning. I have
a message for you.)

```
QRV K     GA+? -----------------------
```
From coast station.
(Send your message.)

Type at your side
(To send a message file, type
MOM before TOR and wait
awhile.)

```
TOR ---- Teleprinting Over Radio
             (Message TX starts.)

NR 9004 ---- Msg No.
TO: TELEX 1234567   FURUNO
     JAPAN OFFICE
     INT. DEP. SEC-1 MANAGER
FM: KOBE MARU/12345 KOBE X
TEXT: Type message.
```
Receiver: Telex no.1234567
           FURUNO ELEC. CO.
Sende: KOBE MARU
Type message

```
KKKK QSL +?
End message.
```
Message finished. Can you
acknowledge receipt)

```
KOBE DE HKRDO QSL NR9004
TKS  NW NIL +?
```
From coast station
From HKRD0 to KOBE.
Received NR9004. Thank you.
No more to send.

```
TKS  NW NIL BIBI +? --------------
```
Type at your ship
(Thank you. I have nothing to
send. Bye Bye.

```
TKS  SEE YOU LATER
BIBI ---------------------------------
```
From coast station
Thank you. See you later.)

Coast station disconnects the line.

Communications example

Table of abbreviations

Abbreviation	Question	Answer or Advice
QRA	What is the name your station?	The name of my station is · · · · .
QRC	By what private enterprise are the accounts for charges for your station settled?	The accounts for my station are settled by the private enterprise · · · · .
QRU	Have you any thing for me?	I have nothing for you.
QRV	Are you ready?	I am ready.
QRX	When will you call me again?	I will call you again at · · · · hours [on · · · · kHz].
QSJ	What is the charge to be collected to · · · · including your internal charge?	The charge to be collected to · · · · including my internal charge is · · · · frans · · · · .
QSL	Can you acknowledge receipt?	I can acknowledge receipt.
QSX	Will you listen to · · · · [call sign] on · · · · kHz?	I am listening to · · · · [call sign] on · · · · kHz.
QTA	Shall I cancel message number · · · · ?	Cancel message number · · · ·
QTC	How many messages have you to send?	I have · · · · message for you.
QTU	What are the hours your station is open?	My station is open from · · · · to · · · · hours.
Abbreviation	Definition	
BK	Signal used to interrupt a transmission progress.	
CFM	Confirm	
DE	"From · · · · "	
K	Invitation to transmit.	
NIL	I have nothing to send to you.	
NW	Now	
PSE	Please	
R	Received	
REF	Reference to · · · · .	
SVC	Prefix indicating a service telegram.	

10-7

Command and abbreviation

Command	Function
TGM+	To indicate that the following message is a radiotelegram.
MSG+	To indicate that the ship station needs to be connected immediately any message held.
OPR+	Call operator.
URG+	Safety, urgency and distress message.
MED+	Request medical advice.
TEST+	Request coast station to send a test message for checking the ship station.
BRK+	To clear the connection with the coast station.
Abbreviation	
GA+	I am ready. Transmit your command.
MOM	Wait a moment.
MSG+	Request pending messages from the shore.
KKKK or NNNN	Terminate a message.
XXXXX	Typo

10.6   Timer Operation

A built-in timer permits automatic transmission and reception of telex messages.

10.6.1   Enabling timer operation

1. Press the function key **F3** to display the Operate menu.
2. Press the **7** key to display the Timer Operation List.
3. Choose the operation (name) you wish to execute.
4. Press the **Enter** key. An asterisk appears beside the operation selected and "T. Op" appears in reverse video on the communication status display. If a file stored on a floppy disk is to be sent, be sure the floppy disk containing the file is inserted in the drive.

```
┌──── Timer Operation List ────┐
│                              │
│ *1                           │
│  2                           │
│  3                           │
│ OP4                          │
│ OP5                          │
│                              │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

Timer operation list

5. Choose another operation (name) if desired.
6. Press the **Esc** key.

When the predetermined time comes, the NBDP Terminal Unit automatically sends or receives the message. The results of timer operation are displayed as either OK or NG (No Good) on the Timer Operation List.

```
┌──── Timer Operation List ────┐
│                              │
│  *1                    OK    │
│   2                          │
│  *3                    OK    │
│  *OP4                  OK    │
│  *OP5                  NG    │
│                              │
└──────────────────────────────┘
```

Timer operation list

10.6.2   Stopping timer operation

1. Press the function key **F3**.
2. Press the **7** key.
3. Choose the operation (name) which has an asterisk attached to it and then press the **Enter** key. Remove all asterisks to cancel all timer programs.

10.7   Scanning

The radio equipment scans a group of operator-selected frequencies (channels), and stops scanning when an signal is received. For registering scan group, see paragraph 8.5.

1. Press the function key **F3** and then the **5** key to show the Scanning Group List on your screen.
   You can confirm the scan channel by pressing the ↑ or ↓ key while pressing the **Shift** key.

```
┌──── Scanning Group List ────┐
│                             │
│   1                         │
│   2                         │
│ ▐3                        ▌ │
│                             │
└─────────────────────────────┘
```

Scanning group list

2. Choose a scan group and press the **Enter** key.
3. The scanning starts and the indication "Scan" appears in reverse video. Further, the name of the scan group appears in the Station Name field.

```
 1:File 2:Edit 3:Operate 4:Window 5:Station 6:System 7:WRU 8:HR 9:Over 10:Break
-------------------------------------------------------2002-09-08 2:01:46 UTC ------Caps-Eng
  Station Name    :  SAITO-1                   Scan                HT
  Frequency (T/R) :  8344.00 / 8705.00(kHz)  Comm Mode : Auto
  Comm Status     :  Connect Send Lock Error
  Sending Volume  :  100(%)    ARQ Error : 0    ARQ Time : 0(sec)
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Communication status display

4. To stop scanning, press the function key **F3** and then the **5** key. "Scan" disappears on the communication status display.

10.8   Communication Buffer

The communication buffer is a temporary memory which stores transmit and receive messages. To display the contents of the communication buffer, do the following:

1. Escape from the message creation screen.
2. Press the ↓ key while pressing the **Fn** key or the ↑ key pressing the **Fn** key. The contents of the communication buffer are displayed.

To print them, press the **Ctrl** and **P** keys simultaneously. To erase the contents from the screen, press the ↓ key at the bottom line.

To erase the contents of the buffer, press the **F1** and **9** keys.

10.9   Preparing Macrofiles for Automatic Telex

10.9.1   Automatic telex overview

This section shows you how to communicate with a coast station which handles automatic telex transmission, using macrofiles. You will also need to register communication channels and stations, and prepare macrofiles.

Coast stations using automatic telex are MCI Marine Services (North America), Sydney Radio (Australia), Lyngby Radio (Denmark), and others. The procedure is mostly common to all coast stations, however refer to the coast station's traffic manual for details.
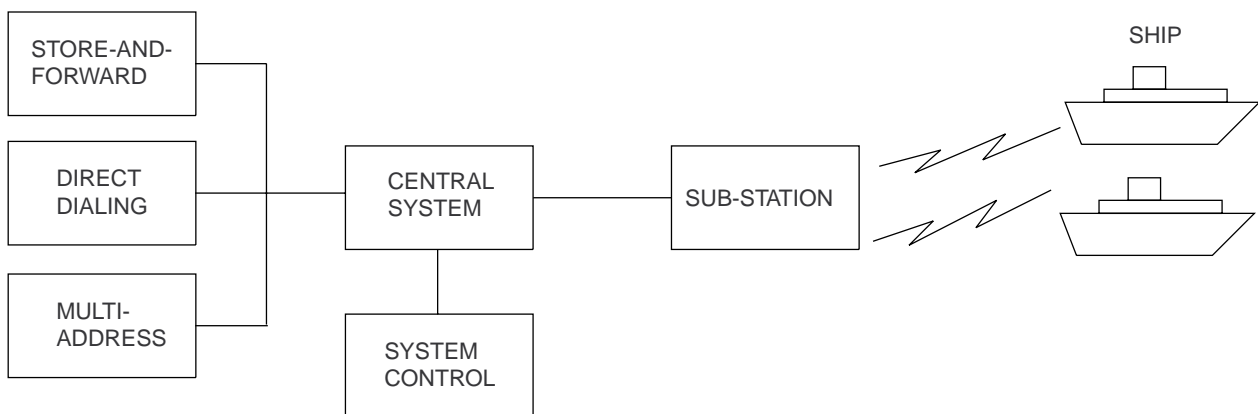
Sample automatic telex network

The service available in automatic telex are

Message transfer between ship and coast station (store-and-forward)

Connection with landline telex (direct dialing)

Multi address.

10.9.2   Preparations

To use automatic telex, you will need to register three items:

- Answerback code

- Scan groups

- Station names

Registering answerback code

The coast station assigns a Telex number. This number functions as an answerback code. An answerback code contains the following:

OOOOO SHIP X

OOOOO: Coast station-assigned five-digit telex code
SHIP: Ship name
X: For shipboard station, normally X is entered.

The procedure for registering the answerback code is the same as which appears on page 8-1. If an answerback code was registered before the commissioning of the coast station, a new answerback code must be entered. To enter a new answerback code, contact FURUNO or an authorized FURUNO agent or dealer.

Registering scan groups

The central system emits a free-signal to indicate a coast station radio channel is in idle condition and available for ship-to-shore calls. The free-signal is detected and recognized by the shipboard equipment as a permission to start the transmission. Then, the shipboard operator initiates a call.

You can scan search for the free-signal automatically by registering coast station radio channels in scan group(s). The procedure for registering scan groups for coast station use is the same as that which appears on page 8-7.

Registering stations

The next step is to enter station name. The procedure is the same as that shown on page 8-3.

10.9.3   Commands

The tables which follows describe the commands for macro operation

Command (Prefixed with @)	Parameter	Content
CALL	S: Station Name	Calling station name and ID on assigned parameter
FREE (support command for CALL)	Two digits, 0-99 min.	Free-signal searching time according to assigned parameter (default setting: 10 min)
	RRR signal	Detect free signal of dot pattern
RETRY (support command for CALL)	Two digits, 0-99 min.	Calling according to assigned parameter (default setting: 10 min)
CASE	Text	For receiving a message (designated by parameter) transmitted by coast station
TIMEOUT (support command for CALL)	Two digits, 0-99 min.	Time allotted for reception of message by CASE command
SEND	Text	Text transmitted according to assigned parameters
	A: file name	Send a file from floppy disk
WRU HR OVER BREAK	None	Function keys F7 – F10
DISPLAY	Text	Text of message appears
INPUT	None	Waiting for keyboard input Transmit keyboard input message

Commands processed by Danish coast station Lyngby

Command	Function
BRK+	Disconnection communications line
DIRTLX ……+	Direct dialing telex (receive only)
KKKK	Terminate message
LTR+	For telex letters mailed from Operations Station to destinations worldwide
MED+	Request medical advice
OPR+	Requesting operating assistance
POS+	Send position data
STA+	Status requested on a store-and-forward message
TLX ……+	Store-and-forward method

For details, consult the coast station's traffic manual.

10.9.4 Store-and-forward method

The following is the sequence of events in transmission of a file by the store-and-forward method.

1. Shipboard station sends message to coast station.
2. Coast station stores message in memory buffer.
3. Shipboard station and coast station clear the radio circuit.
4. Coast station sends message to subscriber designated.

Actual procedure for store-and-forward telex

No.	Procedure	Display	Remarks
1	Call a coast station.	CONNECT appears in reverse video (and bell sounds).	Free-signal found; radio circuit ready.
2	Transmit WRU signal.	00190 TLG DK 26 X X X SHIP X GA+?	Initial identity exchange between coast station and shipboard station
3	Key in subscriber's Telex number. Example: (Hong Kong) 12345 TLX80212345+	MSG+?	Request to start message transmission
4	Transmit file.		Message transmission
5	When transmission is completed, type KKKK.	26 X X X SHIP X 00190 TLG DK GA+?	Transmit your answerback code. Receive other party's answerback code.
6	Transmit BREAK command to clear radio circuit.		

Procedure for preparing a macrofile for store-and-forward method

You will need a macrofile to enable automatic message transmission by store-and-forward method. After preparing it, save it to a floppy disk for future use.

1. Press function key **F1** to display the File menu.
2. Press the **1** key.
3. Prepare macrofile. Below is simple example.

```
┌──────────────── < [1] UNTITLED1 > ────────────────┐
│                                                    │
│   @FREE $RRR$          --------------------------- ① 
│                                                    │
│   @CALL S:LYNGBY RADIO --------------------------- ②
│                                                    │
│   @WRU                                             │
│                                                    │
│   @CASE GA+?                                       │
│                                                    │
│   @SEND TLX80212345+   --------------------------- ③
│                                                    │
│   @CASE MSG+?                                       │
│                                                    │
│   @SEND A: \ABC        --------------------------- ④
│                                                    │
│   @SEND KKKK           --------------------------- ⑤
│                                                    │
│   @CASE GA+?                                       │
│                                                    │
│   @SEND BRK+                                       │
│                                                    │
```

① Search dot pattern free signal until it is found
② Station name (Example: LYNGBY RADIO)
   Who are you?
   Station identity exchange
③ Subscriber's Telex number (in example, 802 is country code of Hong Kong) for store-and-forward method
④ Location and name of file message
   A:\ABC
⑤ Request for termination of message

Sample macrofile for store-and-forward method

4. Press function key **F1** to display the File menu.
5. Press the **3** key. The Close Text appears on the display.

```
┌─────────── close Text ───────────┐
│                                   │
│  Save File?           ┌─────────┐ │
│                       │  Yes    │ │
│  ■                    │         │ │
│                       │  No     │ │
│  (UNTITLED 1)         └─────────┘ │
│                                   │
└───────────────────────────────────┘
```
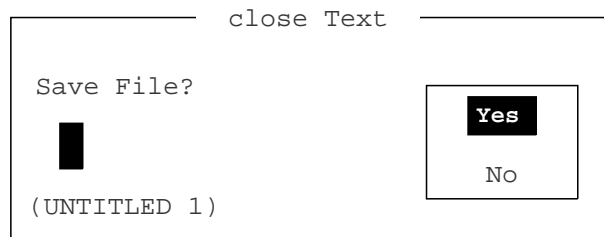
Close text prompt

6. Press the **Enter** key and enter a file name as follows:

       OOOOOOOO.MCR

          ↑   ↑

       File Name   Extension Name

       (max. 8 characters)

7. Press the **Enter** key.

DIRTLX macrofile

Sample DIRTLX macrofile

@FREE RRR	①
@CALL S: LYNGBY RADIO	②
@WRU	
@CASE GA+?	
@SEND DIRTLX725644325+	③
@CASE MSG+?	
@SEND A: \ABC	④
@SEND KKKK	⑤
@CASE GA+?	
@SEND BRK+	

① Search dot pattern free signal until it is found
② Station name (Example: LYNGBY RADIO)
   Who are you?
   Station identity exchange
③ Subscriber's Telex number (in example, 72 is country
   code of JAPAN) for direct dialing mode
④ Location and name of file message
   A: \ABC
⑤ Request for termination of message

Sample DIRLTX macrofile

Procedure for DIRTLX

No.	Procedure	Display	Remarks
1	Call a coast station.	CONNECT appears in reverse video (and bell sounds).	Free-signal found; radio circuit ready.
2	Transmit WRU signal.	00190 TLG DK 26 X X X SHIP X GA+?	Initial identity exchange between coast station and shipboard station
3	Key in subscriber's Telex number. Example: (Japan) 5644325 DIRTLX725644325+	12:20 MOM 5644325 FURUNO J MSG+	Request to start message transmission
4	Transmit file.		Message transmission
5	When transmission is completed, type KKKK.	26 X X X SHIP X 5644325 FURUNO J 00190 TLG DK DURATION ... TIME ... GA+?	Transmit your answerback code. Receive other party's answerback code.
6	Transmit BREAK command to clear radio circuit.		

10.10 Automatic Telex using Macrofile

This section describes how to transmit a telex message using a macrofile.

Basic procedure

1. Register answerback code (Telex number assigned by coast station).
2. Register coast station frequency and channel to scan group.
3. Register station name including scan group name.
4. Retrieve appropriate macrofile. Include station name and message file name. Type message and save file to memory.
5. Open macro operation menu and select a macrofile. Your message will be transmitted automatically. Below is the sequence of automatic message transmission to a coast station.
6. Search for free-signal
7. Call coast station on one of its radio channels
8. After connection is established, identity exchange
9. Transmission of service category and subscriber's address
10. Transmission of message
11. Transmission of termination of message signal
    a) Identity exchange
    b) Clearing of radio circuit

Actual procedure

1. Press function key **F3** to display the Operate menu.

```
┌──────────── Operate ────────────┐
│                                  │
│  1: Call Station                 │
│  2: Macro Operation              │
│  ------------------------------  │
│  3: File to Send                 │
│  4: Cancel Sending               │
│  ------------------------------  │
│  5: Scan (Start/Stop)            │
│  ------------------------------  │
│  6: Manual Reception             │
│  ------------------------------  │
│  7: Timer Operation              │
│  ------------------------------  │
│  8: Manual Calling               │
│  9: Set Frequency                │
│                                  │
└──────────────────────────────────┘
```
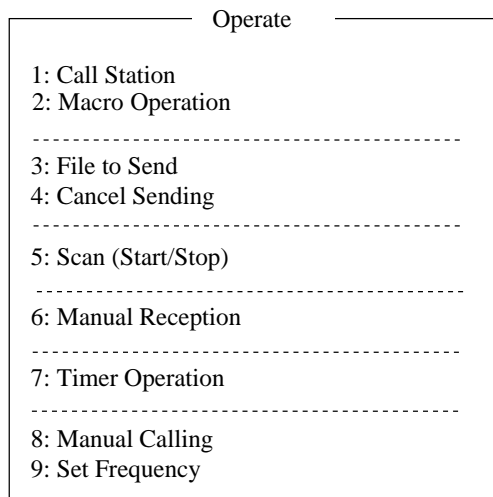
Operate menu

2. Press the **2** key to display the Call Macro screen.

```
                          ──── Call Macro ────
   [A:\TEST1.                                    ]
   ──────File name────────── Size ───── Date & Time ─────────────────

    LYNGBY1.MCR            169      02-10-13 06:23

   [──────────────────── End of Directory ──────────────────── ]




   1 Files exist                       1454000 bytes free

   To select : ENTER  To view : SPACE  To quit : ESC
   ─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────
```

Call macro screen

3. Press the ↓ key to choose a macrofile.
4. Press the **Enter** key.

```
   Call Macro: Lyngby1.MCR
                              ┌───────┐
                              │  Yes  │
                              │       │
                              │   No  │
   Call OK?                   └───────┘
```

Press the **Enter** key to confirm the macrofile selected. The Wait for Free Signal indication appears. Your message will be transmitted automatically.

11. MAINTENANCE & TROUBLESHOOTING

⚠ **WARNING**

ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD
Do not open the equipment.

Only qualified personnel
should work inside the
equipment.

NOTICE

Do not apply paint, anti-corrosive sealant or contact spray to coating or plastic parts of the equipment.

Those items contain organic solvents that can damage coating and plastic parts, especially plastic connectors.

11.1 Radiotelephone Test

Do the following to check the radiotelephone for proper operation.

1. At the RT or Scan screen, press the **3/TEST** key to show the following window.

   ```
   Which test do you carry out?
   CANCEL   DAILY  SELFCHECK
   ```

2. For the self check, select SELF CHECK and push the **ENTER** knob to start the test. OK or NG (No Good) appears as the test result for each item checked. For NG, contact your dealer for advice.

▮▮▮ Tx selfcheck ▮▮▮	
PLL : OK	
RF : OK	TX FIL : OK
PA : OK	COUPL : OK

   (FS-1570)

▮▮▮ Tx selfcheck ▮▮▮	
PLL : OK	RF : OK
PA1 : OK	PA2 : OK
COMB : OK	COUPL : OK
TX FIL : OK	

   (FS-2570)

▮▮▮ Tx selfcheck ▮▮▮	
PLL : OK	RF : OK
PA1 : OK	PA2 : OK
PA3 : OK	PA4 : OK
COMB1: OK	COMB2: OK
COMB : OK	COUPL : OK
TX FIL : OK	

   (FS-5070)

3. Press the **CANCEL** key to quit the test and return to the previously used screen.
4. Set the RX frequency to "2182.00 kHz". (See "2.2 Choosing Channel, Frequency".)
5. Select DAILY and push the **ENTER** knob to show the Daily test display. After several seconds, the test shows results.

▮▮ Daily test ▮▮
JUL-26-2006-18:10
MAIN   : 0550225-01
PANEL 1   : 0550222-01
PANEL 2   : 0550222-01
DSC   : 0550207-01
NBDP   : 0550208-01
▼

   Rotate the **ENTER** knob. ⟷

▮▮ Daily test ▮▮
▲
RCVR1   : OK*
RCVR2   : OK*
TRX   : OK*

   RCVR1, RCVR2, TRX:
   Printed circuit board

   *: If "NG", ask your dealer.

6. When the RCVR1, RCVR2 and TRX are indicated "OK", go to the step 8. If "NG" (No Good) appears, go to the next step.
7. Set the channel used for the SSB to "200". (See "2.2 Choosing Channel, Frequency".)

8. Follow the step 4 and retry the Daily test.

   Confirm the RCVR1, RCVR2 and TRX are indicated "OK". If "NG" (No Good) appears again, ask your dealer.

9. Press the **CANCEL** key to close the test screen.

11.2   Maintenance

Regular maintenance is vital for maintaining performance. Following the procedures below will help keep the equipment in top operating condition.

Maintenance check points

Item	Check Point	Remedy/Remarks
Antenna	Check for physical damage and corrosion.	Replace damaged parts.
Wire antenna	Check that the antenna is properly spanned and separated sufficiently from metallic structures.	If necessary, re-span antenna.
Insulators for antenna	Check for salt water deposits on insulators. Check that connection at the lead-in insulator is tight and rust-free.	Replace damage insulators. Remove salt water deposits. Clean with fresh water, then dry. Remove rust, then tighten bolts and lock nuts. Cover metallic surface with sealing compound.
Antenna coupler	• Check condition of antenna terminal, ground, coaxial cable and control cable. • Check that coupler lid and cable glands are firmly secure. Check for physical damage, corrosion and salt water deposits.	• Tighten loosened connections. • Fasten lid firmly and evenly to prevent water leakage. • Replace if damaged.
Control unit	• Check ground connection, control cable, and external equipment. Confirm that there are no objects on the top of the control unit. • Remove dust from control unit with soft cloth. **Note:** Do not use chemical cleaners to clean the control unit; they can remove paint or markings or deform the equipment.	• Tighten loosened connections; remove foreign material from connectors. • Remove any objects. • Wipe the LCD carefully to prevent scratching, using tissue paper and an LCD cleaner. To remove dirt or salt deposits, use an LCD cleaner, wiping slowly with tissue paper so as to dissolve the dirt or salt. Change paper frequently so the salt or dirt will not scratch the LCD.
Transceiver unit	• Check connection at signal cable, coaxial cable, control cable, power cable, and navigator. • Confirm that there are no objects on the top of the cabinet.	• Tighten loosened connections; remove foreign material from connectors. • Remove any objects.
Power supply	• Check that the supply voltage at transmission is within the rated range (21.6 to 31.2 VDC at the power connector).	• If not within the range, check ship's mains or ship's battery. Low voltage may cause erratic operation.

11.3 Simple Troubleshooting

The table below provides possible problems and the means with which to restore normal operation. If normal operation cannot be restored, do not attempt to check inside the equipment. Any servicing should be referred to a qualified technician.

Problem	Probable cause	Remedy
Power cannot be turned on.	• Mains switchboard may be off. • (DC) voltage is too high. • Battery may have discharged, or poor contact at terminals.	• Turn on the mains switchboard. • Check supply voltage. • Recharge battery and tighten battery terminals.
Display indications do not appear but key lamps are lit.	• Contrast is too low.	• Operate the **9/**⊛ key to adjust contrast.
Power is on but no sound from loudspeaker.	• Loudspeaker is off.	• Operate the **7/**◁ key to turn on the loudspeaker.
Poor articulation	• Wrong class of emission may be in use.	• Class of emission should match that of incoming signal.
Output power reduced to LOW	• Power is automatically reduced to protect against overheating due to continuous transmission.	• Wait until the unit returns to normal condition.
Antenna coupler cannot tune antenna	• Antenna may be disconnected or shorted to ground. • Antenna is out of tunable length. • Poor grounding of antenna coupler. • Breaker in coupler has tripped. • Connection cable loosened or disconnected.	• Check antenna connection. • Recommended length is 10 to 18 meters. • Check coupler ground. • Checks mains voltage and polarity. If normal, reset breaker. • Check cable.
The message "Ship's mains failure" appears, and Output power indicator blinks. Transmission power is decreased to LOW2. (FS-5070 only)	• Input has been switched from AC to DC when AC FAIL line of AC/DC power supply unit PR-850A is connected to FS-5070.	• Press the CANCEL key. The output power can be increased on the RT display. Note that the output power remains "HIGH" when it occurs while sending the distress call. When AC power is restored, this problem is automatically resolved.
After turning on the power, the initial screen appears continuously. (The RT screen should appear after the initial screen is erased.)	• After turning on the NBDP terminal unit, you have turned on the control unit.	• Turn on the control unit before turning on the NBDP terminal unit.

11.4 Error Messages

The table below shows error messages, their meanings, and remedies. If oter error occurs, contact your dealer.

Error messages

Error message	Meaning	Remedy
Busy: RT	Radiotelephone is in operation.	Wait until the radiotelephone is free.
Channel Busy	You attempted to transmit on a channel which is currently busy. (This occurs with Routine and Business priorities only.)	The message is automatically erased when the channel becomes clear.
EPFS error	No position data from navigator for one minute.	Press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. Check the navigator. If it is malfunctioning, manually enter position.
Incoming	Incoming DSC call	Message is automatically cleared when DSC signal has gone.
No position data	The position data is interrupted while AUTO operation.	Check the navigator.
No response: RT	Radiotelephone is not powered or is disconnected.	Check radiotelephone connection.
Oven cold. Tx not ready; wait	Oven too cold; cannot transmit.	Wait until the oven becomes sufficiently warm.
Printer not ready	Automatic print is selected; however, printer is not powered or is disconnected.	Check printer.
Trouble: Oven not ready	Oven not ready; cannot transmit.	Wait until the oven is ready.
TRX PLL UNLOCK	TRX PLL unlock. Transmission is stopped.	Contact your dealer.
TUNE error	Tuning failed. Transmission power is decreased to LOW2. For NBDP, transmission is stopped.	Try to tune again. If unsuccessful, confirm if TUNE error occurs on other frequencies. See "Antenna coupler cannot tune antenna" on page 11-3, or contact your dealer.
Warning: Update position	Position data is older by the amount of time preset on the Alarm menu.	Press the **CANCEL** key to silence alarm. Reenter position on the Position menu.
Watchdog error. Please Power OFF	Internal error (such as CPU trouble) detected. Accompanied with alarm, same type as for distress.	Turn the power off and on to erase the message. Have a qualified technician check the set.
RX1 PLL UNLOCK RX2 PLL UNLOCK	W/R1, W/R2 PLL unlock. Transmission is stopped.	Contact your dealer.
Ship's mains failure	Power input has been switched from AC to DC at PR-850A.	Press the CANCEL key to use the low output power. Check the AC input supply.

11.5   Replacement of Fuses

To protect the equipment from overcurrent and equipment fault, two fuses are provided in the PR-300 Power Supply Unit. If a fuse blows, find the cause before replacing it. If it blows again after replacement, request service.

⚠ WARNING

Use the proper fuse.

Use of a wrong fuse can cause fire or damage to the equipment.

Unit	Fuse
Power Supply Unit PR-300	10 A (100 VAC) or 5 A (200 VAC) and 20 A (24 VDC)

PR-300
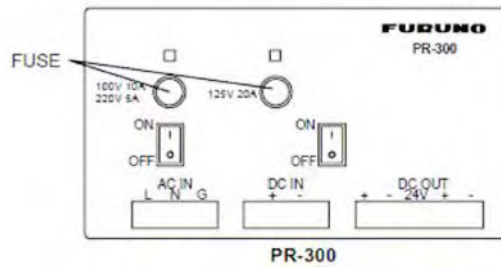
Note: The Power Supply Unit PR-850A (for FS-1570/2570), used with the equipment, does not have a fuse but a circuit breaker. If the breaker has tripped, find the reason before resetting the breaker (upward position).

PR-850A
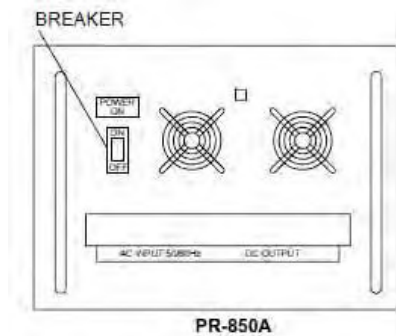
11.6   Test Call

This function sends a test signal to a coast or ship station, over one of six distress and safety frequencies. For that reason, it should not be executed unnecessarily. You can prepare a test call beforehand (see Chapter 6) or at the moment you intend to send a test call. To send a prepared test call, see paragraph 6.5.4 for the procedure. When sending the test call at the moment, do the following.

1. Press the **2/DSC** key.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▢▢▢      Select Message    ▢▢▢  │
├─────────────────┬───────────────┤
│    GENERAL      │   DISTRESS     │
├─────────────────┼───────────────┤
│ INDIVIDUAL      │ RELAY AREA     │
│ PSTN MESSAGE    │ RELAY COAST    │
│ TEST MESSAGE    │ DISTRESS       │
│ GROUP MESSAGE   │                │
│ AREA MESSAGE    │                │
│ POSITION        │ SPECIAL        │
├─────────────────┴───────────────┤
│ MMSI 123456789                   │
│ POS  12°34.5678N    UTC   01:53  │
│      123°45.6789E   EPFS 01:54   │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose TEST MESSAGE and then push the **ENTER** knob.
3. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the STATION ID window.
4. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose MANUAL or SELECT.
5. **For SELECT,** you can choose an ID from the message file list stored.
6. **For MANUAL,** using the numeric keys, key in the ID of the station ID (nine digits) where to send the call and then push the **ENTER** knob.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▢▢▢      Compose msg.      ▢▢▢  │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE      : TEST MESSAGE     │
│ STATION ID    ▯*********         │
│ PRIORITY      : SAFETY           │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ    :       2187.5 kHz   │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│          GO TO VIEW              │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

7. Push the **ENTER** knob to open the DSC FREQ menu. (Note that PRIORITY is automatically selected to SAFETY.)

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ ▢▢▢      Compose msg.      ▢▢▢  │
├─────────────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE      │ 2187.5 │         │
│ STATION ID    │ 4207.5 │         │
│ PRIORITY      │ 6312.0 │         │
│               │ 8414.5 │         │
│               │ 12577.0│         │
│               │ 16804.5│         │
├───────────────┴────────┬────────┤
│ DSC FREQ               │  kHz    │
├────────────────────────┴────────┤
│          GO TO VIEW              │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```

8. Rotate the **ENTER** knob to choose an appropriate frequency and then push the **ENTER** knob. The display changes as below.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│ �   Compose msg.  ▬ │
├──────────────────────────┤
│ MSG TYPE    : TEST MESSAGE│
│ STATION ID  : 001234567   │
│ PRIORITY    : SAFETY      │
│                           │
├──────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ    :    2187.5 kHz│
├──────────────────────────┤
│              GO TO VIEW   │
└──────────────────────────┘
```

9. Press the **CALL** key to send the test call (transmission time: about seven seconds).
10. The display shows "Test message in progress!" while the test call is being transmitted.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│ ┌───────────────────────┐ │
│ │ Test                  │ │
│ │  message in progress! │ │
│ └───────────────────────┘ │
│ DESTINATION ID   : 001234567│
│ PRIORITY         :SAFETY  │
├──────────────────────────┤
│ DSC FREQ    :    2187.5 kHz│
│ TIME TO GO  :       7S    │
└──────────────────────────┘
```

After the test call is completed, the following message appears.

```
┌──────────────────────────┐
│ ┌───────────────────────┐ │
│ │ Waiting for test      │ │
│ │  acknowledgement.     │ │
│ └───────────────────────┘ │
│ DESTINATION ID  : 001234567│
│ PRIORITY        : SAFETY  │
├──────────────────────────┤
│  DSC FREQ    :   2187.5 kHz│
│ TIME TO GO : 4M12S  RESENDING│
└──────────────────────────┘
```

One of the following displays appears. ("No response! Try calling again?" appears when the timer counts down to zero, meaning no response from station.)

```
┌──────────────────────────┐    ┌──────────────────────────┐
│ Test acknowledge         │    │ No response!             │
│ message received.        │    │ Try calling again?       │
│                          │    ├──────────────────────────┤
│ CANCEL: STOP ALARM       │    │ DESTINATION ID:  001234567│
│                          │    │ PRIORITY:        SAFETY   │
│                          │    ├──────────────────────────┤
│                          │    │ DSC FREQ   :   2187.5 kHz │
│                          │    │              RESEND       │
└──────────────────────────┘    └──────────────────────────┘
     Test acknowledge received        No response to test call
```

11. Do the either way depending on the message shown in step 10.

Test acknowledge message received

The audio alarm sounds; press the **CANCEL** key to silence the alarm. The display changes as below.

```
■■■ Received message ■■■
MAR-23-2006-23:59
TEST  ACKNOWLEDGEMENT
SENDER ID :        001234567
PRIORITY:          SAFETY
                        3M10S
          GO TO  VIEW
```

No response! Try calling again?

Re-send call: Push the **ENTER** knob and then press the **CALL** key.
Cancel call: Press the **CANCEL** key to return to the previous screen.

11.7   NBDP Terminal Unit Maintenance

Regular maintenance is important for good performance. A regular maintenance program should be established and should at least include the items mentioned below.

11.7.1   Cleaning the equipment

Wipe off accumulated dust from the terminal unit with a soft cloth. Wipe the LCD carefully to prevent scratching, using tissue paper and an LCD cleaner. To remove dirt or salt deposits, use an LCD cleaner, wiping slowly with tissue paper so as to dissolve the dirt or salt. Change paper frequently so the salt or dirt will not scratch the surface of LCD. Do not use solvents such as thinner, acetone or benzene for cleaning; they can remove paint and marks or deform the equipment.

11.7.2   Connectors and earth connection

Periodically check the connectors for proper seating and the earth connection for rust. Remove rust to maintain a good ground system.

11.7.3   Floppy disk drive

Foreign material on the floppy disk drive head can scratch the magnetic material in the floppy, resulting in loss of data. Clean the floppy disk drive head regularly with a floppy disk drive cleaning disk to prevent erasure of information stored on disks.

11.7.4 Diagnostics

General diagnostics

1. Press the function key **F6** to display the System menu.

```
┌─────────────── System ───────────────┐
│ Setup              Lock  Change  Default │
│ ------------------------------------- │
│ Slave Delay           8 msec (0- 50 msec) │
│ ------------------------------------- │
│ TX/RX MSG Save        OFF  O N        │
│ Edit Before sending   OFF  O N        │
│ ------------------------------------- │
│ Time System           OFF UTC SMT JST │
│ Time & Date           2006/10/16  10:00:00 │
│ Window Color                          │
│ Self Test                             │
└───────────────────────────────────────┘
```

System menu (Example: IB-583)

2. Choose Change from Setup.
3. Choose Self Test (at the bottom of the screen).
4. Press the **Esc** key. The results of the self test are displayed a short time later.

```
┌──────────────── Selftest ────────────────┐
│ Terminal Unit Test : ver. X.XX      :OK  │◄─────── IB-581/IB-583
│ Main Unit Test     : ver. XX        :OK  │◄─────── Main Termina soft (T-CPU Board)
│ Modem Unit Test    : ver. XX        :OK  │◄─────── NBDP Modem
│ Radio Unit Test    : ID FS5070      :OK  │
│ DSC Unit Test      : ID FS5070      :OK  │
│ Printer Unit Test* : Print all character :OK │
└──────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

X.XX = Version No.
*: "NG" and "Printer not ready" when printer is off or
    is abnormal.

Self test results

The test results are shown as OK or NG (No Good). For any NG, try the self test again. If it appears again, call for service. When the test is completed, the message "Selftest Completed. Press any key to escape." Appears.

Tone test

1. Choose Self Test from the System Menu.
2. While pressing and holding down the **Shift** key, press the ↓ key to show the Tone Test menu.

```
┌──────── Tone Test ────────┐
│ 1: Tone Test 1 (All Char) │
│ 2: Tone Test 2 (Fox)      │
│ 3: Tone Test 3 (Beta)     │
└ ─ ─ ─ ─ ─ ─ ─ ─ ─ ─ ─ ─ ─ ┘
```

3. Choose a test and press the **Enter** key.
4. You may stop a tone test at anytime by pressing the **Esc** key.

Tone test 1 (All characters)

This test checks for proper transmission of all figures, letters and codes. To conduct the test, call a station in the ARQ or FEC mode. Execute the test, confirming that all characters are transmitted correctly. "Now Testing Tone Test 1" appears during the testing. Since the test is conducted continuously, you may press the **Esc** key twice followed by the **F10** key to stop the test and return to the tone test menu.

```
 1:File 2:Edit 3:Operate 4:Window 5:Station 6:System 7:WRU 8:HR 9:Over 10:Break
-------------------------------------------------------------- System --------
 Station Name    :                | Setup              Lock  Change   Default
 Frequency (T/R) :            /   | --------------------------------------------
 Comm Status     :  Connect Sen   |

-------------------------------------------------------------- |
```

```
           +------------------------------------------------+
           | Now Testing Tone Test 1 (All Char).            |
           +------------------------------------------------+
```

```
    ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ1234567890-?:().,'=/+abcdefghijklmnopqrstuv
    wxyz

    ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ1234567890-?:().,'=/+abcdefghijklmnopqrstuv
    wxyz

    ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
```

Tone test 2 (Fox)

This test (continuously) checks for proper transmission of the test message THE QUICK BROWN FOX JUMPS OVER THE LAZY DOG 0123456789. To conduct the test, call a station by using the ARQ or FEC mode.

Tone test 3 (Beta)

You may check for proper transmission of the idle signal β. Call up a station using the ARQ mode.

11.7.5 Notification messages

IB-583

Notification message	Meaning	Remedy
Caution: This Editor cannot edit over 16Kbytes	Can not edit the files over 16 kilobytes.	Can not open the files over 16 kilobytes. Delete unnecessary characters so that the file size is less than 16 kilobytes.
Station by that name already exists.	The station name already exists.	Change the station name.
Station memory is full.	The station memory is full.	Delete unnecessary stations.
Scan group by that name already exists.	The scan group name already exists.	Change the scan group name.
Scan group by that name does not exist.	The scan group name does not exist.	Check the scan group name.
Scan group memory is full.	The scan group memory is full.	Delete unnecessary scan groups.
Channel by that number does not exist.	The channel number does not exist.	Check the channel number.
Operation name already exists.	The timer operation name already exists.	Change the timer operation name.
Timer operation memory is full.	The timer operation memory is full.	Delete unnecessary timer operations.
Drive not ready.	The floppy disk is not correctly inserted.	Check if the floppy disk is correctly inserted.
Write protect error.	You tried to write over a file when the disk is write protected.	To write over the file, put the write-protect switch in write-enable position and try again. If you do not want to write over the file, insert another floppy disk and try again.
Floppy Disk Format failed.	A floppy disk could not be formatted.	Check the disk.
File not found. '[file name]'	The file name could not be found.	Check the file name.
Disk full.	The floppy disk is full.	Change the floppy disk or delete unnecessary files.

Check interconnection between terminal and Main.	There is a problem with the connection between the terminal unit and the transceiver unit. (The transceiver unit is off or is not connected.)	Check if the transceiver unit is on. Check the connection between the terminal unit and the transceiver unit. Then do the following; 1. Turn off the terminal unit and the transceiver unit. 2. Turn on the transceiver unit. 3. When the RT screen appears on the transceiver unit, turn on the terminal unit.
Cannot print. Check connection between printer and terminal.	You tried to print but something is wrong with the printer.	Check if the printer is on. Check the connection between the printer and the terminal unit. Check the remaining amount of the roll paper.
Selected file is not macro.	The selected file is not a macro file.	Select a file with ".mcr" extension.
Macro command error.	The macro command is illegal.	Check the macro command.
Wait one minute before calling again after failed.	If a call could not be made, wait a minute before calling again. In the ARQ mode the line is automatically disconnected when there is no reply from the called party. Wait one minute then try the call again.	-

APPENDIX

Menu Tree

#/SETUP key

*Default settings
in boldface italic.*

— HS. VOL (0 to 63, ***45***)

— NB (***OFF***, ON)

— SQ (500-2000 Hz, ***800 Hz***)

— USER CH (Shows user ch entry screen.)

— MESSAGE (Shows Message file entry screen)

— POSITION (Shows Position setup screen)

— DATE/TIME (Shows Date/Time setup screen)

— MEM CLR (RCVD ORDINARY LOG, RCVD DISTRESS LOG, TRANSMITTED LOG, MESSAGE FILES, USER CHANNELS, LOAD DEFAULT)

— USR SETUP
- ALARM
  - INTERNAL ALARM (***ON***, OFF)
  - POSITION OLDER (0.5, 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, ***4.0***)
  - EXT ALARM (***DSTRS/URG***, ROUTINE, ALL, OFF)
  - ALARM DISTANCE (OFF, ***500NM***)
- SOUND
  - KEY CLICK (***ON***, OFF)
  - ORDINARY ALARM (0 to 63, ***47***)
  - DISTRESS ALARM (51 to 63, ***51***)
- AUTO ACK
  - COMPLY TYPE (UNABLE, ***ABLE***)
  - UNABLE REASON (***NO REASON***, BUSY, EQUIP DISABLE, MODE NOT USABLE, CH NOT USABLE)
  - POSITION MESSAGE (***OFF***, ON)
  - POLLING MESSAGE (OFF, ***ON***)
  - TEST MESSAGE (OFF, ***ON***)
- PRINT OUT
  - XMIT MESSAGE (***MANUAL***, AUTO)
  - RCVD MESSAGE (***MANUAL***, AUTO)
  - DAILY TEST (***MANUAL***, AUTO)
- SCAN FREQ (ROUTINE: 2M ***ON***, DISTRESS: all ***ON***)
- KEY ASSIGN (***NONE***, NB, TONE, SDUP/DUP)
- SPECIAL MSG
  - NEUTRAL MSG (***UNABLE***, ABLE)
  - MEDICAL MSG (***UNABLE***, ABLE)
- FAX Rx (ENABLE, ***DISABLE***)
- HOOK SP OFF (ON, ***OFF***)
- TIMER (***10 MIN***, OFF)

— SYS SETUP (Display system settings.)

NBDP terminal unit (telex)

Default settings in boldface italic.

F1: File
- 1: New
- 2: Open
- 3: Close
- 4: Delete
- 5: Rename
- 6: Real Time Printing
- 7: File to Print
- 8: Cancel Priniting
- 9: Clear Buffer
- 0: Floppy Disk Format

F2: Edit
- 1: Undo
- 2: Cut
- 3: Copy
- 4: Paste
- 5: Select All
- 6: Search
- 7: Replace
- 8: Goto Top
- 9: Goto Bottom
- 0: Goto Line
- A: Change Text

F3: Operate
- 1: Call Station
- 2: Macro Operation
- 3: File to Send
- 4: Cancel Sending
- 5: Scan (Start/Stop)
- 6: Manual Reception
- 7: Timer Operation
- 8: Manual Calling
- 9: Set Frequency

F4: Window
- 1: Calendar
- 2: Distress Frequency Table

F5: Station
- 1: Station Entry
- 2: Timer Operation Entry
- 3: Scan Entry
- 4: User Channel Entry
- 5: Answerback Code Entry
- 6: Group ID Entry (4/5 digit)
- 7: Group ID Entry (9 digit)
- 8: Select ID Entry (4/5 digit)
- 9: Select ID Entry (9 digit)

F6: System
- Setup (**Lock**, Change, Default)
- Slave Delay (0-50 msec, **8**)
- TX/RX MSG Save (**OFF**, ON)
- Edit Before Sending (**OFF**, ON)
- Time System (OFF, **UTC**, SMT, JST)
- Time & Date
- Display Mode (IB-581) (**Normal**, Reverse)
- Window Color (IB-583)
  - Window Color Setup
    - Window — BASE WINDOW, BACK SCROLL, EDIT 1-2, FUNCTION, SUB MENU 1-3, MESSAGE
    - Fore Color ┐
    - Back Color ┘ — L-WHITE, YELLOW, L-MAGENTA, L-RED, L-CYAN, L-GREEN, L-BLUE, GRAY, WHITE, BROWN, MAGENTA, RED, CYAN, GREEN, BLUE, BLACK
  - Default Color
- Self Test

F7: WRU (Who are you?)
F8: HR (Here is)
F9: Over
F10: Break

AP-2

Frequency Tables

DSC frequency table

TX (kHz)	RX (kHz)	Remarks	File Name
2187.5	2187.5	Distress and Safety Frequencies	
4207.5	4207.5		
6312.0	6312.0		
8414.5	8414.5		
12577.0	12577.0		
16804.5	16804.5		
458.5	455.5	International Frequencies	INTL-0.4M
2189.5(2177.0*)	2177.0		INTL-2M
4208.0	4219.5		INTL-4M
6312.5	6331.0		INTL-6M
8415.0	8436.5		INTL-8M
12577.5	12657.0		INTL-12M
16805.0	16903.0		INTL-16M
18898.5	19703.5		INTL-18M
22374.5	22444.0		INTL-22M
25208.5	26121.0		INTL-25M
4208.5	4220.0	Local-1 Frequencies	LOCAL1-4M
6313.0	6331.5		LOCAL1-6M
8415.5	8437.0		LOCAL1-8M
12578.0	12657.5		LOCAL1-12M
16805.5	16903.5		LOCAL1-16M
18899.0	19704.0		LOCAL1-18M
22375.0	22444.5		LOCAL1-22M
25209.0	26121.5		LOCAL1-25M
4209.0	4220.5	Local-2 Frequencies	LOCAL2-4M
6313.5	6332.0		LOCAL2-6M
8416.0	8437.5		LOCAL2-8M
12578.5	12658.0		LOCAL2-12M
16806.0	16904.0		LOCAL2-16M
18899.5	19704.5		LOCAL2-18M
22375.5	22445.0		LOCAL2-22M
25209.5	26122.0		LOCAL2-25M

14. = Ship-to-ship

Custom channels (to be programmed by FURUNO dealers)

CH NO	Ship Receive (kHz)	Ship Transmit (kHz)	Remarks

MF band working carrier frequencies (ref. US CFR 47 Part 80.371)

Region	Ship Transmit (kHz)	Ship Receive (kHz)	Region	Ship Transmit (kHz)	Ship Receive (kHz)
East Coast	2031.5	2490.0	Gulf Coast	2009.0	2466.0
	2118.0	2514.0		2134.0	2530.0
	2126.0	2522.0		2142.0	2538.0
	2142.0	2538.0		2158.0[1]	2550.0
	2166.0	2558.0		2166.0	2558.0
	2198.0	2590.0		2206.0	2598.0
	2366.0	2450.0		2366.0	2450.0
	2382.0	2482.0		2382.0	2482.0
	2390.0	2566.0		2430.0	2572.0
	2400.0	2400.0		2458.0	2506.0
	2406.0	2506.0	Great Lakes [2]	2118.0	2514.0
West Coast	2003.0	2450.0		2158.0	2550.0
	2009.0	2442.0		2206.0	2582.0
	2009.0	2566.0	Alaska	2131.0	2309.0
	2031.5	2566.0		2134.0	2312.0
	2126.0	2522.0		2240.0	2400.0
	2206.0	2598.0	Hawaii	2134.0	2530.0
	2382.0	2466.0	Caribbean	2009.0	2506.0
	2430.0	2482.0		2086.0[3]	2585.0
				2134.0	2530.0
			Guam	2009.0	2506.0

Above frequencies are not programmed. Contact a FURUNO representative.

1 = Unlimited use December 15 to April 1
2 = 2206 kHz for distress only
3 = Limited to pep of 150 W.

MF band SSB working carrier frequencies

CH NO	Ship Receive (kHz)	Ship Transmit (kHz)	CH NO	Ship Receive (kHz)	Ship Transmit (kHz)
241	1635	2060	271	1725	2069
242	1638	2063	272	1728	2072
243	1641	2066	273	1731	2075
244	1644	2069	274	1734	2078
245	1647	2072	275	1737	2081
246	1650	2075	276	1740	2084
247	1653	2078	277	1743	2087
248	1656	2081	278	1746	2090
249	1659	2084	279	1749	2093
250	1662	2087	280	1752	2096
251	1665	2090	281	1755	2099
252	1668	2093	282	1758	2102
253	1671	2096	283	1761	2105
254	1674	2099	284	1764	2108
255	1677	2102	285	1767	2111
256	1680	2105	286	1770	2114
257	1683	2108	287	1773	2117
258	1686	2111	288	1776	2120
259	1689	2114	289	1779	2123
260	1692	2117	290	1782	2126
261	1695	2120	291	1785	2129
262	1698	2123	292	1788	2132
263	1701	2126	293	1791	2135
264	1704	2129	294	1794	2138
265	1707	2132	295	1797	2060
266	1710	2135			
267	1713	2138			
268	1716	2060			
269	1719	2063			
270	1722	2066			

4/6 MHz ITU SSB carrier frequencies (ITU RR Appendix 16)

4 MHz SSB (J3E)		
ITU CH NO	Ship RX	Ship TX
401	4357	4065
402	4360	4068
403	4363	4071
404	4366	4074
405	4369	4077
406	4372	4080
407	4375	4083
408	4378	4086
409	4381	4089
410	4384	4092
411	4387	4095
412	4390	4098
413	4393	4101
414	4396	4104
415	4399	4107
416	4402	4110
417	4405	4113
418	4408	4116
419	4411	4119
420	4414	4122
421	4417	4125
422	4420	4128
423	4423	4131
424	4426	4134
425	4429	4137
426	4432	4140
427	4435	4143
428	4351	4351
429	4354	4354
430	4146	4146
431	4149	4149
432 (01)	4000	4000
433 (02)	4003	4003
434 (03)	4006	4006
435 (04)	4009	4009
436 (05)	4012	4012
437 (06)	4015	4015
438 (07)	4018	4018
439 (08)	4021	4021
440 (09)	4024	4024
441 (10)	4027	4027
442 (11)	4030	4030
443 (12)	4033	4033
444 (13)	4036	4036
445 (14)	4039	4039
446 (15)	4042	4042
447 (16)	4045	4045
448 (17)	4048	4048
449 (18)	4051	4051
450 (19)	4054	4054
451 (20)	4057	4057
452 (21)	4060	4060

6 MHz SSB (J3E)		
ITU CH NO	Ship RX	Ship TX
601	6501	6200
602	6504	6203
603	6507	6206
604	6510	6209
605	6513	6212
606	6516	6215
607	6519	6218
608	6522	6221
609	6224	6224
610	6227	6227
611	6230	6230

These frequencies are factory programmed.

CH NOs in ( ) are ITU NOs (RR Section C-1).

AP-7

8 MHz ITU SSB carrier frequencies (ITU RR Appendix 16)

8 MHz SSB (J3E) - Duplex			8 MHz SSB (J3E) - Simplex		
ITU CH NO	Ship RX	Ship TX	(ITU CH NO)	Ship RX	Ship TX
801	8719	8195	840 (01)	8101	8101
802	8722	8198	841 (02)	8104	8104
803	8725	8201	842 (03)	8107	8107
804	8728	8204	843 (04)	8110	8110
805	8731	8207	844 (05)	8113	8113
806	8734	8210	845 (06)	8116	8116
807	8737	8213	846 (07)	8119	8119
808	8740	8216	847 (08)	8122	8122
809	8743	8219	848 (09)	8125	8125
810	8746	8222	849 (10)	8128	8128
811	8749	8225	850 (11)	8131	8131
812	8752	8228	851 (12)	8134	8134
813	8755	8231	852 (13)	8137	8137
814	8758	8234	853 (14)	8140	8140
815	8761	8237	854 (15)	8143	8143
816	8764	8240	855 (16)	8146	8146
817	8767	8243	856 (17)	8149	8149
818	8770	8246	857 (18)	8152	8152
819	8773	8249	858 (19)	8155	8155
820	8776	8252	859 (20)	8158	8158
821	8779	8255	860 (21)	8161	8161
822	8782	8258	861 (22)	8164	8164
823	8785	8261	862 (23)	8167	8167
824	8788	8264	863 (24)	8170	8170
825	8791	8267	864 (25)	8173	8173
826	8794	8270	865 (26)	8176	8176
827	8797	8273	866 (27)	8179	8179
828	8800	8276	867 (28)	8182	8182
829	8803	8279	868 (29)	8185	8185
830	8806	8282	869 (30)	8188	8188
831	8809	8285	870 (31)	8191	8191
832	8812	8288	CH NOs in ( ) are ITU NOs (RR Section C-1).		
833	8291	8291			
834	8707	8707			
835	8710	8710			
836	8713	8713			
837	8716	8716			
838	8294	8294			
839	8297	8297			

12/16 ITU SSB carrier frequencies (ITU RR Appendix 16)

CH NO.	12 MHz SSB (J3E) SHIP RX	SHIP TX	CH NO.	16 MHz SSB (J3E) SHIP RX	SHIP TX	CH NO.	16 MHz SSB (J3E) SHIP RX	SHIP TX
1201	13077	12230	1601	17242	16360	1651	17392	16510
1202	13080	12233	1602	17245	16363	1652	17395	16513
1203	13083	12236	1603	17248	16366	1653	17398	16516
1204	13086	12239	1604	17251	16369	1654	17401	16519
1205	13089	12242	1605	17254	16372	1655	17404	16522
1206	13092	12245	1606	17257	16375	1656	17407	16525
1207	13095	12248	1607	17260	16378	1657	16528	16528
1208	13098	12251	1608	17263	16381	1658	16531	16531
1209	13101	12254	1609	17266	16384	1659	16534	16534
1210	13104	12257	1610	17269	16387	1660	16537	16537
1211	13107	12260	1611	17272	16390	1661	16540	16540
1212	13110	12263	1612	17275	16393	1662	16543	16543
1213	13113	12266	1613	17278	16396	1663	16546	16546
1214	13116	12269	1614	17281	16399			
1215	13119	12272	1615	17284	16402			
1216	13122	12275	1616	17287	16405			
1217	13125	12278	1617	17290	16408			
1218	13128	12281	1618	17293	16411			
1219	13131	12284	1619	17296	16414			
1220	13134	12287	1620	17299	16417			
1221	13137	12290	1621	17302	16420			
1222	13140	12293	1622	17305	16423			
1223	13143	12296	1623	17308	16426			
1224	13146	12299	1624	17311	16429			
1225	13149	12302	1625	17314	16432			
1226	13152	12305	1626	17317	16435			
1227	13155	12308	1627	17320	16438			
1228	13158	12311	1628	17323	16441			
1229	13161	12314	1629	17326	16444			
1230	13164	12317	1630	17329	16447			
1231	13167	12320	1631	17332	16450			
1232	13170	12323	1632	17335	16453			
1233	13173	12326	1633	17338	16456			
1234	13176	12329	1634	17341	16459			
1235	13179	12332	1635	17344	16462			
1236	13182	12335	1636	17347	16465			
1237	13185	12338	1637	17350	16468			
1238	13188	12341	1638	17353	16471			
1239	13191	12344	1639	17356	16474			
1240	13194	12347	1640	17359	16477			
1241	13197	12350	1641	17362	16480			
1242	12353	12353	1642	17365	16483			
1243	12356	12356	1643	17368	16486			
1244	12359	12359	1644	17371	16489			
1245	12362	12362	1645	17374	16492			
1246	12365	12365	1646	17377	16495			
			1647	17380	16498			
			1648	17383	16501			
			1649	17386	16504			
			1650	17389	16507			

Above is factory programmed.

18/19, 22, 25/26 ITU SSB carrier frequencies (ITU RR Appendix 16)

18/19 MHz SSB (J3E)		
CH NO.	SHIP RX	SHIP TX
1801	19755	18780
1802	19758	18783
1803	19761	18786
1804	19764	18789
1805	19767	18792
1806	19770	18795
1807	19773	18798
1808	19776	18801
1809	19779	18804
1810	19782	18807
1811	19785	18810
1812	19788	18813
1813	19791	18816
1814	19794	18819
1815	19797	18822
1816	18825	18825
1817	18828	18828
1818	18831	18831
1819	18834	18834
1820	18837	18837
1821	18840	18840
1822	18843	18843

22 MHz SSB (J3E)		
CH NO.	SHIP RX	SHIP TX
2201	22696	22000
2202	22699	22003
2203	22702	22006
2204	22705	22009
2205	22708	22012
2206	22711	22015
2207	22714	22018
2208	22717	22021
2209	22720	22024
2210	22723	22027
2211	22726	22030
2212	22729	22033
2213	22732	22036
2214	22735	22039
2215	22738	22042
2216	22741	22045
2217	22744	22048
2218	22747	22051
2219	22750	22054
2220	22753	22057
2221	22756	22060
2222	22759	22063
2223	22762	22066
2224	22765	22069
2225	22768	22072
2226	22771	22075
2227	22774	22078
2228	22777	22081
2229	22780	22084
2230	22783	22087
2231	22786	22090
2232	22789	22093
2233	22792	22096
2234	22795	22099
2235	22798	22102
2236	22801	22105
2237	22804	22108
2238	22807	22111
2239	22810	22114
2240	22813	22117
2241	22816	22120
2242	22819	22123
2243	22822	22126
2244	22825	22129
2245	22828	22132
2246	22831	22135
2247	22834	22138
2248	22837	22141
2249	22840	22144
2250	22843	22147

22 MHz SSB (J3E)		
CH NO.	SHIP RX	SHIP TX
2251	22846	22150
2252	22849	22153
2253	22852	22156
2254	22159	22159
2255	22162	22162
2256	22165	22165
2257	22168	22168
2258	22171	22171
2259	22174	22174
2260	22177	22177

25/26 MHz SSB (J3E)		
CH NO	Ship RX	Ship TX
2501	26145	25070
2502	26148	25073
2503	26151	25076
2504	26154	25079
2505	26157	25082
2506	26160	25085
2507	26163	25088
2508	26166	25091
2509	26169	25094
2510	26172	25097
2511	25100	25100
2512	25103	25103
2513	25106	25106
2514	25109	25109
2515	25112	25112
2516	25115	25115
2517	25118	25118

MF band telex frequency table

CH NO.	Ship Transmit (NBDP, DSC)	Ship Receive (NBDP, DSC)	
2001	2142.0	1607.0	
2002	2142.5	1607.5	
2003	2143.0	1608.0	
2004	2143.5	1608.5	
2005	2144.0	1609.0	
2006	2144.5	1609.5	
2007	2145.0	1610.0	
2008	2145.5	1610.5	
2009	2146.0	1611.0	
2010	2146.5	1611.5	
2011	2147.0	1612.0	
2012	2147.5	1612.5	
2013	2148.0	1613.0	
2014	2148.5	1613.5	
2015	2149.0	1614.0	NBDP/DSC
2016	2149.5	1614.5	
2017	2150.0	1615.0	
2018	2150.5	1615.5	
2019	2151.0	1616.0	
2020	2151.5	1616.5	
2021	2152.0	1617.0	
2022	2152.5	1617.5	
2023	2153.0	1618.0	
2024	2153.5	1618.5	
2025	2154.0	1619.0	
2026	2154.5	1619.5	
2027	2155.0	1620.0	
2028	2155.5	1620.5	
2029	2156.0	1621.0	
2030	2156.5	1621.5	
2031	2157.0	1622.0	
2032	2157.5	1622.5	DSC
2033	2158.0	1623.0	
2034	2158.5	1623.5	
2035	2159.0	1624.0	
2036	2159.5	1624.5	

AP-11

ITU Telex frequency table (1/4)

ITU TELEX FREQUENCY TABLE (1/4)

FURUNO

4 MHz BAND No.	TX	RX	6 MHz BAND No.	TX	RX	8 MHz BAND No.	TX	RX	12 MHz BAND No.	TX	RX	16 MHz BAND No.	TX	RX	18/19 MHz BAND No.	TX	RX	22 MHz BAND No.	TX	RX	25/26 MHz BAND No.	TX	RX
4001	4172.5	4210.5	6001	6263.0	6314.5	8001	8376.5	8417.0	12001	12477.0	12579.5	16001	16683.5	16807.5	18001	18870.5	19681.0	22001	22284.5	22376.5	25001	25173.0	26101.0
4002	4173.0	4211.0	6002	6263.5	6315.0	8002	8377.0	8417.5	12002	12477.5	12580.0	16002	16684.0	16808.0	18002	18871.0	19681.5	22002	22285.0	22377.0	25002	25173.5	26101.5
4003	4173.5	4211.5	6003	6264.0	6315.5	8003	8377.5	8418.0	12003	12478.0	12580.5	16003	16684.5	16808.5	18003	18871.5	19682.0	22003	22285.5	22377.5	25003	25174.0	26102.0
4004	4174.0	4212.0	6004	6264.5	6316.0	8004	8378.0	8418.5	12004	12478.5	12581.0	16004	16685.0	16809.0	18004	18872.0	19682.5	22004	22286.0	22378.0	25004	25174.5	26102.5
4005	4174.5	4212.5	6005	6265.0	6316.5	8005	8378.5	8419.0	12005	12479.0	12581.5	16005	16685.5	16809.5	18005	18872.5	19683.0	22005	22286.5	22378.5	25005	25175.0	26103.0
4006	4175.0	4213.0	6006	6265.5	6317.0	8006	8379.0	8419.5	12006	12479.5	12582.0	16006	16686.0	16810.0	18006	18873.0	19683.5	22006	22287.0	22379.0	25006	25175.5	26103.5
4007	4175.5	4213.5	6007	6266.0	6317.5	8007	8379.5	8420.0	12007	12480.0	12582.5	16007	16686.5	16810.5	18007	18873.5	19684.0	22007	22287.5	22379.5	25007	25176.0	26104.0
4008	4176.0	4214.0	6008	6266.5	6318.0	8008	8380.0	8420.5	12008	12480.5	12583.0	16008	16687.0	16811.0	18008	18874.0	19684.5	22008	22288.0	22380.0	25008	25176.5	26104.5
4009	4176.5	4214.5	6009	6267.0	6318.5	8009	8380.5	8421.0	12009	12481.0	12583.5	16009	16687.5	16811.5	18009	18874.5	19685.0	22009	22288.5	22380.5	25009	25177.0	26105.0
4010	4177.0	4215.0	6010	6267.5	6319.0	8010	8381.0	8421.5	12010	12481.5	12584.0	16010	16688.0	16812.0	18010	18875.0	19685.5	22010	22289.0	22381.0	25010	25177.5	26105.5
4011	4177.5	4215.5	6011	6268.0	6319.5	8011	8381.5	8422.0	12011	12482.0	12584.5	16011	16688.5	16812.5	18011	18875.5	19686.0	22011	22289.5	22381.5	25011	25178.0	26106.0
4012	4178.0	4216.0	6012	6268.5	6320.0	8012	8382.0	8422.5	12012	12482.5	12585.0	16012	16689.0	16813.0	18012	18876.0	19686.5	22012	22290.0	22382.0	25012	25178.5	26106.5
4013	4178.5	4216.5	6013	6269.0	6320.5	8013	8382.5	8423.0	12013	12483.0	12585.5	16013	16689.5	16813.5	18013	18876.5	19687.0	22013	22290.5	22382.5	25013	25179.0	26107.0
4014	4179.0	4217.0	6014	6269.5	6321.0	8014	8383.0	8423.5	12014	12483.5	12586.0	16014	16690.0	16814.0	18014	18877.0	19687.5	22014	22291.0	22383.0	25014	25179.5	26107.5
4015	4179.5	4217.5	6015	6270.0	6321.5	8015	8383.5	8424.0	12015	12484.0	12586.5	16015	16690.5	16814.5	18015	18877.5	19688.0	22015	22291.5	22383.5	25015	25180.0	26108.0
4016	4180.0	4218.0	6016	6270.5	6322.0	8016	8384.0	8424.5	12016	12484.5	12587.0	16016	16691.0	16815.0	18016	18878.0	19688.5	22016	22292.0	22384.0	25016	25180.5	26108.5
4017	4180.5	4218.5	6017	6271.0	6322.5	8017	8384.5	8425.0	12017	12485.0	12587.5	16017	16691.5	16815.5	18017	18878.5	19689.0	22017	22292.5	22384.5	25017	25181.0	26109.0
4018	4181.0	4219.0	6018	6271.5	6323.0	8018	8385.0	8425.5	12018	12485.5	12588.0	16018	16692.0	16816.0	18018	18879.0	19689.5	22018	22293.0	22385.0	25018	25181.5	26109.5
4019	4181.5	4219.5	6019	6272.0	6323.5	8019	8385.5	8426.0	12019	12486.0	12588.5	16019	16692.5	16816.5	18019	18879.5	19690.0	22019	22293.5	22385.5	25019	25182.0	26110.0
4020	4202.5	4202.5	6020	6272.5	6324.0	8020	8386.0	8426.5	12020	12486.5	12589.0	16020	16693.0	16817.0	18020	18880.0	19690.5	22020	22294.0	22386.0	25020	25182.5	26110.5
4021	4203.0	4203.0	6021	6273.0	6324.5	8021	8386.5	8427.0	12021	12487.0	12589.5	16021	16693.5	16817.5	18021	18880.5	19691.0	22021	22294.5	22386.5	25021	25183.0	26111.0
4022	4203.5	4203.5	6022	6273.5	6325.0	8022	8387.0	8427.5	12022	12487.5	12590.0	16022	16694.0	16818.0	18022	18881.0	19691.5	22022	22295.0	22387.0	25022	25183.5	26111.5
4023	4204.0	4204.0	6023	6274.0	6325.5	8023	8387.5	8428.0	12023	12488.0	12590.5	16023	16694.5	16818.5	18023	18881.5	19692.0	22023	22295.5	22387.5	25023	25184.0	26112.0
4024	4204.5	4204.5	6024	6274.5	6326.0	8024	8388.0	8428.5	12024	12488.5	12591.0	16024	16695.0	16819.0	18024	18882.0	19692.5	22024	22296.0	22388.0	25024	25184.5	26112.5
4025	4205.0	4205.0	6025	6275.0	6326.5	8025	8388.5	8429.0	12025	12489.0	12591.5	16025	16695.5	16819.5	18025	18882.5	19693.0	22025	22296.5	22388.5	25025	25185.0	26113.0
4026	4205.5	4205.5	6026	6275.5	6327.0	8026	8389.0	8429.5	12026	12489.5	12592.0	16026	16696.0	16820.0	18026	18883.0	19693.5	22026	22297.0	22389.0	25026	25185.5	26113.5
4027	4206.0	4206.0	6027	6281.0	6327.5	8027	8389.5	8430.0	12027	12490.0	12592.5	16027	16696.5	16820.5	18027	18883.5	19694.0	22027	22297.5	22389.5	25027	25186.0	26114.0
4028	4206.5	4206.5	6028	6281.5	6328.0	8028	8390.0	8430.5	12028	12490.5	12593.0	16028	16697.0	16821.0	18028	18884.0	19694.5	22028	22298.0	22390.0	25028	25186.5	26114.5
4029	4207.0	4207.0	6029	6282.0	6328.5	8029	8390.5	8431.0	12029	12491.0	12593.5	16029	16697.5	16821.5	18029	18884.5	19695.0	22029	22298.5	22390.5	25029	25187.0	26115.0
4030	4207.5	4207.5	6030	6282.5	6329.0	8030	8391.0	8431.5	12030	12491.5	12594.0	16030	16698.0	16822.0	18030	18885.0	19695.5	22030	22299.0	22391.0	25030	25187.5	26115.5
4031	4208.0	4208.0	6031	6283.0	6329.5	8031	8391.5	8432.0	12031	12492.0	12594.5	16031	16698.5	16822.5	18031	18885.5	19696.0	22031	22299.5	22391.5	25031	25188.0	26116.0
4032	4208.5	4208.5	6032	6283.5	6330.0	8032	8392.0	8432.5	12032	12492.5	12595.0	16032	16699.0	16823.0	18032	18886.0	19696.5	22032	22300.0	22392.0	25032	25188.5	26116.5
4033	4209.0	4209.0	6033	6284.0	6330.5	8033	8392.5	8433.0	12033	12493.0	12595.5	16033	16699.5	16823.5	18033	18886.5	19697.0	22033	22300.5	22392.5	25033	25189.0	26117.0
			6034	6284.5	6331.0	8034	8393.0	8433.5	12034	12493.5	12596.0	16034	16700.0	16824.0	18034	18887.0	19697.5	22034	22301.0	22393.0	25034	25189.5	26117.5
			6035	6300.5	6300.5	8035	8393.5	8434.0	12035	12494.0	12596.5	16035	16700.5	16824.5	18035	18887.5	19698.0	22035	22301.5	22393.5	25035	25190.0	26118.0
			6036	6301.0	6301.0	8036	8394.0	8434.5	12036	12494.5	12597.0	16036	16701.0	16825.0	18036	18888.0	19698.5	22036	22302.0	22394.0	25036	25190.5	26118.5
			6037	6301.5	6301.5	8037	8394.5	8435.0	12037	12495.0	12597.5	16037	16701.5	16825.5	18037	18888.5	19699.0	22037	22302.5	22394.5	25037	25191.0	26119.0
			6038	6302.0	6302.0	8038	8395.0	8435.5	12038	12495.5	12598.0	16038	16702.0	16826.0	18038	18889.0	19699.5	22038	22303.0	22395.0	25038	25191.5	26119.5
			6039	6302.5	6302.5	8039	8395.5	8436.0	12039	12496.0	12598.5	16039	16702.5	16826.5	18039	18889.5	19700.0	22039	22303.5	22395.5	25039	25192.0	26120.0
			6040	6303.0	6303.0	8040	8396.0	8436.5	12040	12496.5	12599.0	16040	16703.0	16827.0	18040	18890.0	19700.5	22040	22304.0	22396.0	25040	25192.5	26120.5
			6041	6303.5	6303.5	8041	8396.5	8396.5	12041	12497.0	12599.5	16041	16703.5	16827.5	18041	18890.5	19701.0	22041	22304.5	22304.5	25041	25193.0	25193.0
			6042	6304.0	6304.0	8042	8397.0	8397.0	12042	12497.5	12600.0	16042	16704.0	16828.0	18042	18891.0	19701.5	22042	22305.0	22305.0	25042	25193.5	25193.5
			6043	6304.5	6304.5	8043	8397.5	8397.5	12043	12498.0	12600.5	16043	16704.5	16828.5	18043	18891.5	19702.0	22043	22305.5	22305.5	25043	25194.0	25194.0
			6044	6305.0	6305.0	8044	8398.0	8398.0	12044	12498.5	12601.0	16044	16705.0	16829.0	18044	18892.0	19702.5	22044	22306.0	22306.0	25044	25194.5	25194.5
			6045	6305.5	6305.5	8045	8398.5	8398.5	12045	12499.0	12601.5	16045	16705.5	16829.5	18045	18892.5	19703.0	22045	22306.5	22306.5	25045	25195.0	25195.0
			6046	6306.0	6306.0	8046	8399.0	8399.0	12046	12499.5	12499.5	16046	16706.0	16830.0	18046	18893.0	19703.5	22046	22307.0	22307.0	25046	25195.5	25195.5
			6047	6306.5	6306.5	8047	8399.5	8399.5	12047	12500.0	12500.0	16047	16706.5	16830.5	18047	18893.5	19704.0	22047	22307.5	22307.5	25047	25196.0	25196.0
			6048	6307.0	6307.0	8048	8400.0	8400.0	12048	12500.5	12500.5	16048	16707.0	16831.0	18048	18894.0	19704.5	22048	22308.0	22308.0	25048	25196.5	25196.5
			6049	6307.5	6307.5	8049	8400.5	8400.5	12049	12501.0	12501.0	16049	16707.5	16831.5	18049	18894.5	18894.5	22049	22308.5	22308.5	25049	25197.0	25197.0
			6050	6308.0	6308.0	8050	8401.0	8401.0	12050	12501.5	12501.5	16050	16708.0	16832.0	18050	18895.0	18895.0	22050	22309.0	22309.0	25050	25197.5	25197.5
			6051	6308.5	6308.5	8051	8401.5	8401.5	12051	12502.0	12502.0	16051	16708.5	16832.5	18051	18895.5	18895.5	22051	22309.5	22309.5	25051	25198.0	25198.0
			6052	6309.0	6309.0	8052	8402.0	8402.0	12052	12502.5	12502.5	16052	16709.0	16833.0	18052	18896.0	18896.0	22052	22310.0	22310.0	25052	25198.5	25198.5
			6053	6309.5	6309.5	8053	8402.5	8402.5	12053	12503.0	12503.0	16053	16709.5	16833.5	18053	18896.5	18896.5	22053	22310.5	22310.5	25053	25199.0	25199.0
			6054	6310.0	6310.0	8054	8403.0	8403.0	12054	12503.5	12503.5	16054	16710.0	16834.0	18054	18897.0	18897.0	22054	22311.0	22311.0	25054	25199.5	25199.5
			6055	6310.5	6310.5	8055	8403.5	8403.5	12055	12504.0	12504.0	16055	16710.5	16834.5	18055	18897.5	18897.5	22055	22311.5	22311.5	25055	25200.0	25200.0
			6056	6311.0	6311.0	8056	8404.0	8404.0	12056	12504.5	12504.5	16056	16711.0	16835.0	18056	18898.0	18898.0	22056	22312.0	22312.0	25056	25200.5	25200.5
			6057	6311.5	6311.5	8057	8404.5	8404.5	12057	12505.0	12505.0	16057	16711.5	16835.5	18057	18898.5	18898.5	22057	22312.5	22312.5	25057	25201.0	25201.0
			6058	6312.0	6312.0	8058	8405.0	8405.0	12058	12505.5	12505.5	16058	16712.0	16836.0	18058	18899.0	18899.0	22058	22313.0	22313.0	25058	25201.5	25201.5
			6059	6312.5	6312.5	8059	8405.5	8405.5	12059	12506.0	12506.0	16059	16712.5	16836.5	18059	18899.5	18899.5	22059	22313.5	22313.5	25059	25202.0	25202.0
			6060	6313.0	6313.0	8060	8406.0	8406.0	12060	12506.5	12506.5	16060	16713.0	16837.0				22060	22314.0	22314.0	25060	25202.5	25202.5
			6061	6313.5	6313.5	8061	8406.5	8406.5	12061	12507.0	12507.0	16061	16713.5	16837.5				22061	22314.5	22314.5	25061	25203.0	25203.0
						8062	8407.0	8407.0	12062	12507.5	12507.5	16062	16714.0	16838.0				22062	22315.0	22315.0	25062	25203.5	25203.5
						8063	8407.5	8407.5	12063	12508.0	12508.0	16063	16714.5	16838.5				22063	22315.5	22315.5	25063	25204.0	25204.0
						8064	8408.0	8408.0	12064	12508.5	12508.5	16064	16715.0	16715.0				22064	22316.0	22316.0	25064	25204.5	25204.5
						8065	8408.5	8408.5	12065	12509.0	12509.0	16065	16715.5	16715.5				22065	22316.5	22316.5	25065	25205.0	25205.0

ITU Telex frequency table (2/4)

ITU TELEX FREQUENCY TABLE (2/4)

FURUNO

4 MHz BAND			6 MHz BAND			8 MHz BAND			12 MHz BAND			16 MHz BAND			18/19 MHz BAND			22 MHz BAND			25/26 MHz BAND		
No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX
						8066	8409.0	8409.0	12066	12509.5	12612.0	16066	16716.0	16839.0				22066	22317.0	22409.0	25066	25205.5	25205.5
						8067	8409.5	8409.5	12067	12510.0	12612.5	16067	16716.5	16839.5				22067	22317.5	22409.5	25067	25206.0	25206.0
						8068	8410.0	8410.0	12068	12510.5	12613.0	16068	16717.0	16840.0				22068	22318.0	22410.0	25068	25206.5	25206.5
						8069	8410.5	8410.5	12069	12511.0	12613.5	16069	16717.5	16840.5				22069	22318.5	22410.5	25069	25207.0	25207.0
						8070	8411.0	8411.0	12070	12511.5	12614.0	16070	16718.0	16841.0				22070	22319.0	22411.0	25070	25207.5	25207.5
						8071	8411.5	8411.5	12071	12512.0	12614.5	16071	16718.5	16841.5				22071	22319.5	22411.5	25071	25208.0	25208.0
						8072	8412.0	8412.0	12072	12512.5	12615.0	16072	16719.0	16842.0				22072	22320.0	22412.0	25072	25208.5	26121.0
						8073	8412.5	8412.5	12073	12513.0	12615.5	16073	16719.5	16842.5				22073	22320.5	22412.5	25073	25209.0	26121.5
						8074	8413.0	8413.0	12074	12513.5	12616.0	16074	16720.0	16843.0				22074	22321.0	22413.0	25074	25209.5	26122.0
						8075	8413.5	8413.5	12075	12514.0	12616.5	16075	16720.5	16843.5				22075	22321.5	22413.5			
						8076	8414.0	8414.0	12076	12514.5	12617.0	16076	16721.0	16844.0				22076	22322.0	22414.0			
						8077	8414.5	8414.5	12077	12515.0	12617.5	16077	16721.5	16844.5				22077	22322.5	22414.5			
						8078	8415.0	8436.5	12078	12515.5	12618.0	16078	16722.0	16845.0				22078	22323.0	22415.0			
						8079	8415.5	8437.0	12079	12516.0	12618.5	16079	16722.5	16845.5				22079	22323.5	22415.5			
						8080	8416.0	8437.5	12080	12516.5	12619.0	16080	16723.0	16846.0				22080	22324.0	22416.0			
									12081	12517.0	12619.5	16081	16723.5	16846.5				22081	22324.5	22416.5			
									12082	12517.5	12620.0	16082	16724.0	16847.0				22082	22325.0	22417.0			
									12083	12518.0	12620.5	16083	16724.5	16847.5				22083	22325.5	22417.5			
									12084	12518.5	12621.0	16084	16725.0	16848.0				22084	22326.0	22418.0			
									12085	12519.0	12621.5	16085	16725.5	16848.5				22085	22326.5	22418.5			
									12086	12519.5	12622.0	16086	16726.0	16849.0				22086	22327.0	22419.0			
									12087	12520.0	12622.5	16087	16726.5	16849.5				22087	22327.5	22419.5			
									12088	12520.5	12623.0	16088	16727.0	16850.0				22088	22328.0	22420.0			
									12089	12521.0	12623.5	16089	16727.5	16850.5				22089	22328.5	22420.5			
									12090	12521.5	12624.0	16090	16728.0	16851.0				22090	22329.0	22421.0			
									12091	12522.0	12624.5	16091	16728.5	16851.5				22091	22329.5	22421.5			
									12092	12522.5	12625.0	16092	16729.0	16852.0				22092	22330.0	22422.0			
									12093	12523.0	12625.5	16093	16729.5	16852.5				22093	22330.5	22422.5			
									12094	12523.5	12626.0	16094	16730.0	16853.0				22094	22331.0	22423.0			
									12095	12524.0	12626.5	16095	16730.5	16853.5				22095	22331.5	22423.5			
									12096	12524.5	12627.0	16096	16731.0	16854.0				22096	22332.0	22424.0			
									12097	12525.0	12627.5	16097	16731.5	16854.5				22097	22332.5	22424.5			
									12098	12525.5	12628.0	16098	16732.0	16855.0				22098	22333.0	22425.0			
									12099	12526.0	12628.5	16099	16732.5	16855.5				22099	22333.5	22425.5			
									12100	12526.5	12629.0	16100	16733.0	16856.0				22100	22334.0	22426.0			
									12101	12527.0	12629.5	16101	16733.5	16856.5				22101	22334.5	22426.5			
									12102	12527.5	12630.0	16102	16734.0	16857.0				22102	22335.0	22427.0			
									12103	12528.0	12630.5	16103	16734.5	16857.5				22103	22335.5	22427.5			
									12104	12528.5	12631.0	16104	16735.0	16858.0				22104	22336.0	22428.0			
									12105	12529.0	12631.5	16105	16735.5	16858.5				22105	22336.5	22428.5			
									12106	12529.5	12632.0	16106	16736.0	16859.0				22106	22337.0	22429.0			
									12107	12530.0	12632.5	16107	16736.5	16859.5				22107	22337.5	22429.5			
									12108	12530.5	12633.0	16108	16737.0	16860.0				22108	22338.0	22430.0			
									12109	12531.0	12633.5	16109	16737.5	16860.5				22109	22338.5	22430.5			
									12110	12531.5	12634.0	16110	16738.0	16861.0				22110	22339.0	22431.0			
									12111	12532.0	12634.5	16111	16738.5	16861.5				22111	22339.5	22431.5			
									12112	12532.5	12635.0	16112	16739.0	16862.0				22112	22340.0	22432.0			
									12113	12533.0	12635.5	16113	16739.5	16862.5				22113	22340.5	22432.5			
									12114	12533.5	12636.0	16114	16740.0	16863.0				22114	22341.0	22433.0			
									12115	12534.0	12636.5	16115	16740.5	16863.5				22115	22341.5	22433.5			
									12116	12534.5	12637.0	16116	16741.0	16864.0				22116	22342.0	22434.0			
									12117	12535.0	12637.5	16117	16741.5	16864.5				22117	22342.5	22434.5			
									12118	12535.5	12638.0	16118	16742.0	16865.0				22118	22343.0	22435.0			
									12119	12536.0	12638.5	16119	16742.5	16865.5				22119	22343.5	22435.5			
									12120	12536.5	12639.0	16120	16743.0	16866.0				22120	22344.0	22436.0			
									12121	12537.0	12639.5	16121	16743.5	16866.5				22121	22344.5	22436.5			
									12122	12537.5	12640.0	16122	16744.0	16867.0				22122	22345.0	22437.0			
									12123	12538.0	12640.5	16123	16744.5	16867.5				22123	22345.5	22437.5			
									12124	12538.5	12641.0	16124	16745.0	16868.0				22124	22346.0	22438.0			
									12125	12539.0	12641.5	16125	16745.5	16868.5				22125	22346.5	22438.5			
									12126	12539.5	12642.0	16126	16746.0	16869.0				22126	22347.0	22439.0			
									12127	12540.0	12642.5	16127	16746.5	16869.5				22127	22347.5	22439.5			
									12128	12540.5	12643.0	16128	16747.0	16870.0				22128	22348.0	22440.0			
									12129	12541.0	12643.5	16129	16747.5	16870.5				22129	22348.5	22440.5			
									12130	12541.5	12644.0	16130	16748.0	16871.0				22130	22349.0	22441.0			

ITU Telex frequency table (3/4)

ITU TELEX FREQUENCY TABLE (3/4)

FURUNO

4 MHz BAND			6 MHz BAND			8 MHz BAND			12 MHz BAND			16 MHz BAND			18/19 MHz BAND			22 MHz BAND			25/26 MHz BAND		
No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX
									12131	12542.0	12644.0	16131	16753.5	16871.5				22131	22349.5	22441.5			
									12132	12542.5	12644.5	16132	16754.0	16872.0				22132	22350.0	22442.0			
									12133	12543.0	12645.0	16133	16754.5	16872.5				22133	22350.5	22442.5			
									12134	12543.5	12645.5	16134	16755.0	16873.0				22134	22351.0	22443.0			
									12135	12544.0	12646.0	16135	16755.5	16873.5				22135	22351.5	22443.5			
									12136	12544.5	12646.5	16136	16756.0	16874.0				22136	22352.0	22444.0			
									12137	12545.0	12647.0	16137	16756.5	16874.5				22137	22352.5	22444.5			
									12138	12545.5	12647.5	16138	16757.0	16875.0				22138	22353.0	22445.0			
									12139	12546.0	12648.0	16139	16757.5	16875.5				22139	22353.5	22445.5			
									12140	12546.5	12648.5	16140	16758.0	16876.0				22140	22354.0	22446.0			
									12141	12547.0	12649.0	16141	16758.5	16876.5				22141	22354.5	22446.5			
									12142	12547.5	12649.5	16142	16759.0	16877.0				22142	22355.0	22447.0			
									12143	12548.0	12650.0	16143	16759.5	16877.5				22143	22355.5	22447.5			
									12144	12548.5	12650.5	16144	16760.0	16878.0				22144	22356.0	22448.0			
									12145	12549.0	12651.0	16145	16760.5	16878.5				22145	22356.5	22448.5			
									12146	12549.5	12651.5	16146	16761.0	16879.0				22146	22357.0	22449.0			
									12147	12555.0	12652.0	16147	16761.5	16879.5				22147	22357.5	22449.5			
									12148	12555.5	12652.5	16148	16762.0	16880.0				22148	22358.0	22450.0			
									12149	12556.0	12653.0	16149	16762.5	16880.5				22149	22358.5	22450.5			
									12150	12556.5	12653.5	16150	16763.0	16881.0				22150	22359.0	22451.0			
									12151	12557.0	12654.0	16151	16763.5	16881.5				22151	22359.5	22451.5			
									12152	12557.5	12654.5	16152	16764.0	16882.0				22152	22360.0	22452.0			
									12153	12558.0	12655.0	16153	16764.5	16882.5				22153	22360.5	22452.5			
									12154	12558.5	12655.5	16154	16765.0	16883.0				22154	22361.0	22453.0			
									12155	12559.0	12656.0	16155	16765.5	16883.5				22155	22361.5	22453.5			
									12156	12559.5	12656.5	16156	16766.0	16884.0				22156	22362.0	22454.0			
									12157	12560.0	12657.0	16157	16766.5	16884.5				22157	22362.5	22454.5			
									12158	12560.5	12657.5	16158	16767.0	16885.0				22158	22363.0	22455.0			
									12159	12561.0	12658.0	16159	16767.5	16885.5				22159	22363.5	22455.5			
									12160	12561.5	12658.5	16160	16768.0	16886.0				22160	22364.0	22456.0			
									12161	12562.0	12659.0	16161	16768.5	16886.5				22161	22364.5	22456.5			
									12162	12562.5	12659.5	16162	16769.0	16887.0				22162	22365.0	22457.0			
									12163	12563.0	12660.0	16163	16769.5	16887.5				22163	22365.5	22457.5			
									12164	12563.5	12660.5	16164	16770.0	16888.0				22164	22366.0	22458.0			
									12165	12564.0	12661.0	16165	16770.5	16888.5				22165	22366.5	22458.5			
									12166	12564.5	12661.5	16166	16771.0	16889.0				22166	22367.0	22459.0			
									12167	12565.0	12662.0	16167	16771.5	16889.5				22167	22367.5	22459.5			
									12168	12565.5	12662.5	16168	16772.0	16890.0				22168	22368.0	22460.0			
									12169	12566.0	12663.0	16169	16772.5	16890.5				22169	22368.5	22460.5			
									12170	12566.5	12663.5	16170	16773.0	16891.0				22170	22369.0	22461.0			
									12171	12567.0	12664.0	16171	16773.5	16891.5				22171	22369.5	22461.5			
									12172	12567.5	12664.5	16172	16774.0	16892.0				22172	22370.0	22462.0			
									12173	12568.0	12665.0	16173	16774.5	16892.5				22173	22370.5	22462.5			
									12174	12568.5	12665.5	16174	16775.0	16893.0				22174	22371.0	22463.0			
									12175	12569.0	12666.0	16175	16775.5	16893.5				22175	22371.5	22463.5			
									12176	12569.5	12666.5	16176	16776.0	16894.0				22176	22372.0	22464.0			
									12177	12570.0	12667.0	16177	16776.5	16894.5				22177	22372.5	22464.5			
									12178	12570.5	12667.5	16178	16777.0	16895.0				22178	22373.0	22465.0			
									12179	12571.0	12668.0	16179	16777.5	16895.5				22179	22373.5	22465.5			
									12180	12571.5	12668.5	16180	16778.0	16896.0				22180	22374.0	22466.0			
									12181	12572.0	12669.0	16181	16778.5	16896.5				22181	22374.5	22466.5			
									12182	12572.5	12669.5	16182	16779.0	16897.0				22182	22375.0	22467.0			
									12183	12573.0	12670.0	16183	16779.5	16897.5				22183	22375.5	22467.5			
									12184	12573.5	12670.5	16184	16780.0	16898.0									
									12185	12574.0	12671.0	16185	16780.5	16898.5									
									12186	12574.5	12671.5	16186	16781.0	16899.0									
									12187	12575.0	12672.0	16187	16781.5	16899.5									
									12188	12575.5	12672.5	16188	16782.0	16900.0									
									12189	12576.0	12673.0	16189	16782.5	16900.5									
									12190	12576.5	12673.5	16190	16783.0	16901.0									
									12191	12577.0	12674.0	16191	16783.5	16901.5									
									12192	12577.5	12674.5	16192	16784.0	16902.0									
									12193	12578.0	12675.0	16193	16784.5	16902.5									
									12194	12578.5	12675.5	16194	16785.0	16903.0									
												16195	16785.5	16903.5									

ITU Telex frequency table (4/4)

ITU TELEX FREQUENCY TABLE (4/4)

FURUNO

4 MHz BAND			6 MHz BAND			8 MHz BAND			12 MHz BAND			16 MHz BAND			18/19 MHz BAND			22 MHz BAND			25/26 MHz BAND		
No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX	No.	TX	RX
												16196	16786.0	16786.0									
												16197	16786.5	16786.5									
												16198	16787.0	16787.0									
												16199	16787.5	16787.5									
												16200	16788.0	16788.0									
												16201	16788.5	16788.5									
												16202	16789.0	16789.0									
												16203	16789.5	16789.5									
												16204	16790.0	16790.0									
												16205	16790.5	16790.5									
												16206	16791.0	16791.0									
												16207	16791.5	16791.5									
												16208	16792.0	16792.0									
												16209	16792.5	16792.5									
												16210	16793.0	16793.0									
												16211	16793.5	16793.5									
												16212	16794.0	16794.0									
												16213	16794.5	16794.5									
												16214	16795.0	16795.0									
												16215	16795.5	16795.5									
												16216	16796.0	16796.0									
												16217	16796.5	16796.5									
												16218	16797.0	16797.0									
												16219	16797.5	16797.5									
												19220	16798.0	16798.0									
												16221	16798.5	16798.5									
												16222	16799.0	16799.0									
												16223	16799.5	16799.5									
												16224	16800.0	16800.0									
												16225	16800.5	16800.5									
												16226	16801.0	16801.0									
												16227	16801.5	16801.5									
												16228	16802.0	16802.0									
												16229	16802.5	16802.5									
												16230	16803.0	16803.0									
												16231	16803.5	16803.5									
												16232	16804.0	16804.0									
												16233	16804.5	16804.5									
												16234	16805.0	16903.0									
												16235	16805.5	16903.5									
												16236	16806.0	16904.0									

AP-15

Telex Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning
ADV	Advise
ACK	Acknowledge
AGN	Again
BI (GS)	Good bye
BK	I cut off.
CFM	Confirm
COL	Collation
CRV	How do you receive?
DER	Out of order
DWN	Down
EEE	Error
FM	From
GA	Go ahead.
MNS	Minutes
MOM	Wait (Waiting)
MUTI	Mutilated
NA	Correspondence to this subscriber is not admitted.
NC	No circuits
NCH	Subscriber's number has been changed.
NP	The called party is not or no longer is a subscriber.
NR	Indicate your call number.
OCC	Subscriber is engaged.
OK	Agreed.
P (or 0)	Stop your transmission.
PLS (PSE)	Please
PPR	Paper
R (RCD)	Received
RAP	I will call you again.
RD	Read
RE	Referrring to
RPT	Repeat
SRY	Sorry
SVP	Please
TAX	What is the charge?
TEST MSG	Please send a test message?
THRU	You are in communication with telex position
TKS (TNX)	Thanks
TLX	Telex

Digital Interface (IEC 61162-1)
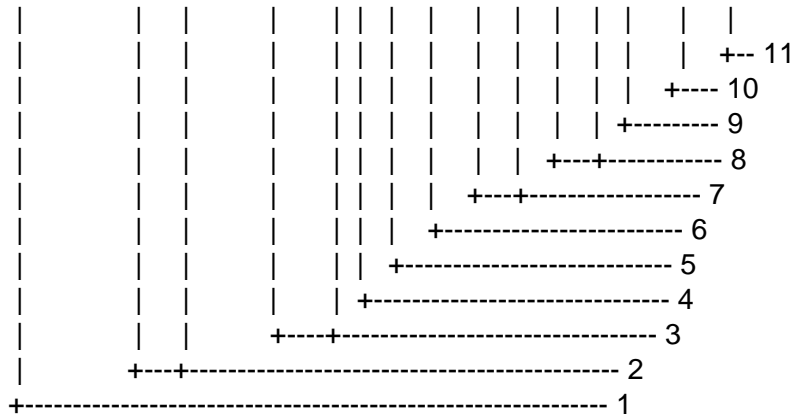
I/O Sentences

Input sentences (IEC 61162-1)

GNS, RMC, GLL, GGA, ZDA

Input sentence description

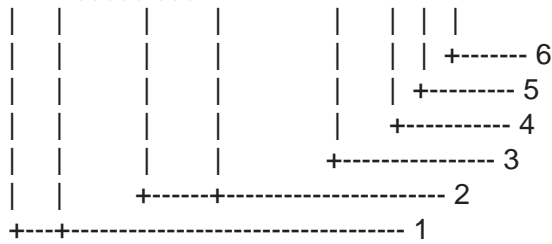**GGA – Global positioning system(GPS) fix data**

```
$--GGA,hhmmss.ss,llll.lll,a,yyyyy.yyy,a,x,xx,x.x,x.x,M,x.x,M,x.x,xxxx*hh<CR><LF>
            |        |   |      |    ||| |  |  |  |  | |  | |  |   |
            |        |   |      |    ||| |  |  |  |  | |  | |  |   +-- 11
            |        |   |      |    ||| |  |  |  |  | |  | |  +---- 10
            |        |   |      |    ||| |  |  |  |  | |  +--------- 9
            |        |   |      |    ||| |  |  |  |  +---+----------- 8
            |        |   |      |    ||| |  |  +---+----------------- 7
            |        |   |      |    ||| +----------------------- 6
            |        |   |      |    || +------------------------- 5
            |        |   |      |    | +--------------------------- 4
            |        |   |      +----+------------------------------- 3
            |     +---+------------------------------------------- 2
            +------------------------------------------------------- 1
```

1. UTC of position
2. Latitude, N/S
3. Longitude, E/W
4. GPS quality indicator
5. Number of satllite in use,00-12, may be different from the number in view
6. Horizontal dilution of precision
7. Antenna altitude above/below mean sealevel, m
8. Geoidal separation, m
9. Age of differential GPS data
10. Differential reference station ID, 0000-1023
11. Checksum

GLL – Geographic position – latitude/longitude

```
$--GLL,llll.lll,a,yyyyy.yyy,a,hhmmss.ss,A,a*hh<CR><LF>
        |   |     |      |        |     | | | |
        |   |     |      |        |     | | | +------- 6
        |   |     |      |        |     | | +--------- 5
        |   |     |      |        |     | +----------- 4
        |   |     |      |        |     +------------- 3
        |   |     +------+---------------------- 2
        +---+-------------------------------- 1
```

1. Latitude, N/S
2. Longitude, E/W
3. UTC of position
4. Status: A=data valid, V=data invalid
5. Mode indicator(see note)
6. Checksum

NOTE   Positioning system Mode indicator:
    A = Autonomous
    D = Differential
    E = Estimated (dead reckoning)
    M = Manual input
    S = Simulator
    N = Data not valid

The Mode indicator field supplements the Status field. The Status field shall be set to V=invalid for all values of Operating Mode except for A=Autonomous and D=Differential. The positioning system Mode indicator and Status field shall not be null fields.

ZDA – Time and date

```
$--ZDA,hhmmss.ss,xx,xx,xxxx,xx,xx*hh<CR><LF>
        |         |  |   |   |  | | |
        |         |  |   |   |  | | +--------- 7
        |         |  |   |   |  | +----------- 6
        |         |  |   |   |  +------------- 5
        |         |  |   |   +---------------- 4
        |         |  |   +-------------------- 3
        |         |  +----------------------- 2
        +------------------------------- 1
```
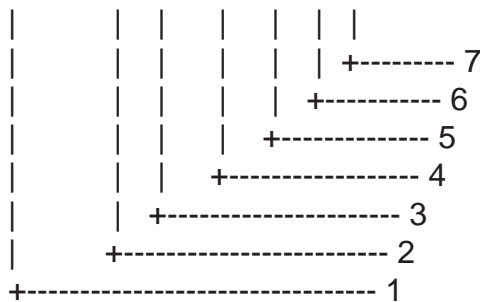
1. UTC
2. Day, 01 to 31(UTC)
3. Month, 01 to 12(UTC)
4. Year(UTC)
5. Local zone hours, 00h to +-13h
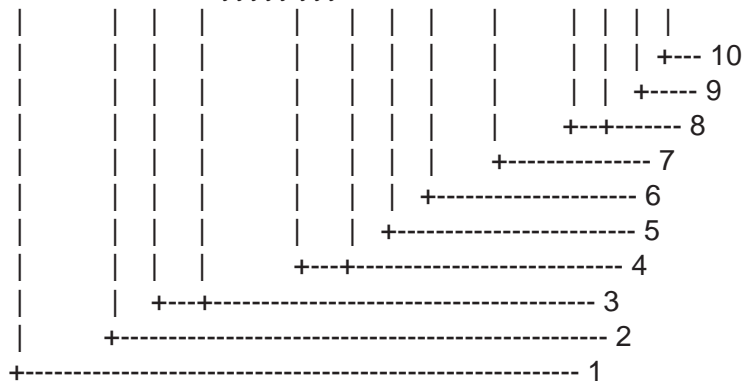6. Local zone minutes, 00 to +59
   as local hours
7. Checksum

AP-18

GNS – GNSS fix data

$--GNS,hhmmss.ss,llll.lll,a,yyyyy.yyy,a,c--c,xx,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x,x.x*hh<CR><LF>

```
            |     |   |   |   | |  | | | | | | | |
            |     |   |   |   | |  | | | | | | | +--- 11
            |     |   |   |   | |  | | | | | | +------ 10
            |     |   |   |   | |  | | | | +---------- 9
            |     |   |   |   | |  | | | +------------- 8
            |     |   |   |   | |  | | +----------------- 7
            |     |   |   |   | |  | +--------------------- 6
            |     |   |   |   | | +----------------------- 5
            |     |   |   |   | +--------------------------- 4
            |     |   |   +-----+----------------------------- 3
            |       +-----+------------------------------------- 2
            +----------------------------------------------------- 1
```
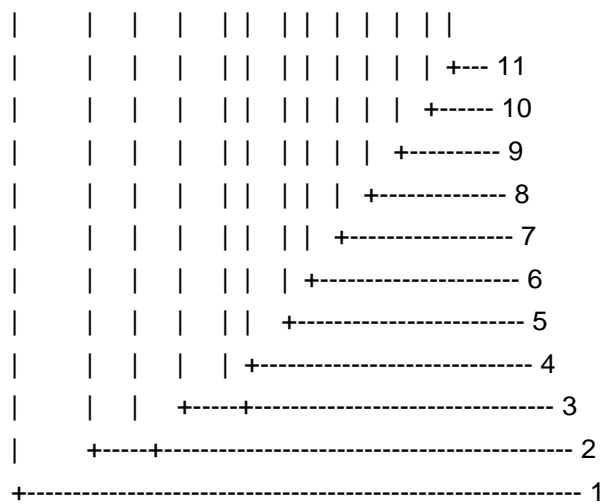
1. UTC of position
2. Latitude, N/S
3. Longitude, E/W
4. Mode indicator
5. Total number of satllite in use,00-99
6. HDOP
7. Antenna altitude, metres, re:mean-sea-level(geoid)
8. Geoidal separation
9. Age of differential data
10. Differential reference station ID
11. Checksum

RMC – Recommended minimum specific GPS/TRANSIT data

```
$--RMC,hhmmss.ss,A,llll.lll,a,yyyyy.yyy,a,x.x,x.x,xxxxxx,x.x,a,a*hh<CR><LF>
        |       | | |       | | | | |   |     | | | |
        |       | | |       | | | | |   |     | | | +--- 10
        |       | | |       | | | | |   |     | | +----- 9
        |       | | |       | | | | |   |     +--+------- 8
        |       | | |       | | | | |   +-------------- 7
        |       | | |       | | | +-------------------- 6
        |       | | |       | | +----------------------- 5
        |       | | |       +---+----------------------- 4
        |       | +---+------------------------------------- 3
        |       +--------------------------------------------- 2
        +----------------------------------------------------- 1
```

1. UTC of position fix
2. Status: A=data valid, V=navigation receiver warning
3. Latitude, N/S
4. Longitude, E/W
5. Speed over ground, knots
6. Course over ground, degrees true
7. Date: dd/mm/yy
8. Magnetic variation, degrees E/W
9. Mode indicator(see note)
10. Checksum

NOTE Positioning system Mode indicator:

   A = Autonomous
   D = Differential
   E = Estimated (dead reckoning)
   M = Manual input
   S = Simulator
   N = Data not valid

The Mode indicator field supplements the Status field. The Status field
shall be set to V=invalid for all values of Operating Mode except for
A=Autonomous and D=Differential. The positioning system Mode indicator
and Status field shall not be null fields.

Schematic diagram

```
        T-IF BOARD               MOTHER BOARD              T-CPU BOARD
       ┌─────────┐              ┌─────────┐              ┌─────────┐
       │ 05P0757 │              │ 05P0759 │              │ 05P0732A│
       └─────────┘              └─────────┘              └─────────┘
                                                              OPEN: IEC 61162-1 (NMEA 0183)
                                                          S2  SHORT: CIF

┌──────────┐ TB6  R58                      P201      P301      J1   R60    R59   CR11    1          4
│IEC 61162-1│    10         J3                                              U18
└──────────┘          41       41                           330   100            PC-400
  RD3_A  24   R59              42       42                                1SS355   3          5
  RD3_B  25   10

              C29  C28
              100P 100P
```
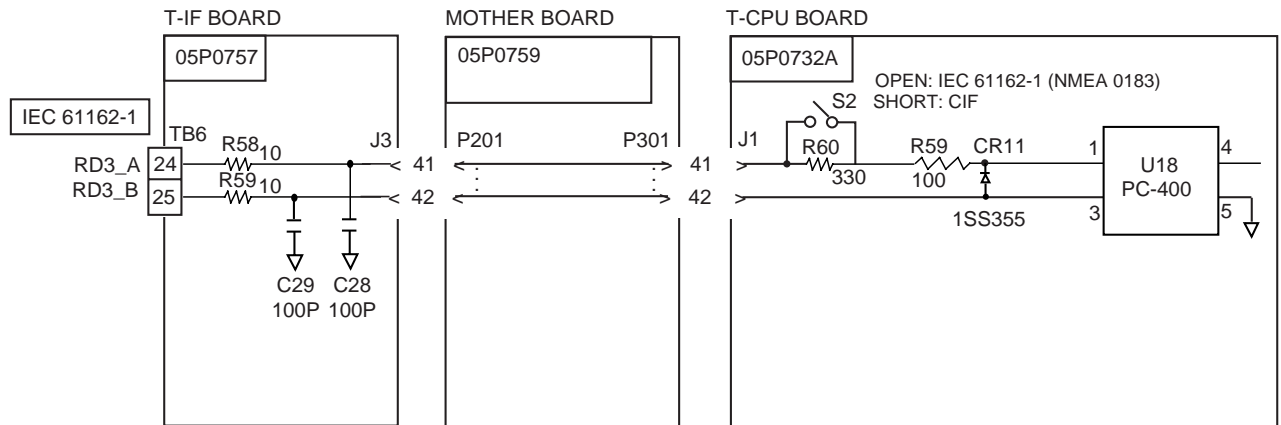
Load requirements as a listener

Isolation: Optocoupler
Input impedance: 450Ω
Max. voltage: ±15 V
Threshold: 4 mA

AP-21

Parts List

This equipment contains complex modules in which fault diagnosis and repair down to component level are not practical (IMO A.694(17)/8.3.1). Only some discrete components are used. FURUNO Electric Co., Ltd. Believes identifying these components is of no value for shipboard maintenance; therefore, they are not listed in this manual. Major modules can be located on the parts location photos on pages AP-26 thru AP-30.

Transceiver unit FS-1570T

FURUNO

ELECTRICAL PARTS LIST
Aug-02

Model	FS-1570T	
Unit	TRANSCEIVER UNIT	
Blk.No.		

SYMBOL	TYPE	CODE No.	REMARKS	SHIPPABLE ASSEMBLY
	PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD			
B2	05P0731, T-I/F	005-963-050		X
B3	05P0732B, T-CPU	001-033-810		X
B4	05P0733, TX/RX	005-963-090		X
B5	05P0734A, W/R	001-005-370		X
B6	05P0735, PA	005-963-130		X
B7	05P0736, TX-FIL	005-963-150		X
B8	05P0737A, SW-REG	001-005-390		X
B9	05P0742, MB	005-963-210		X
B10	05P0746, PRESEL	005-963-250		X
B11	05P0747, REF OSC	005-963-270		X
B13	05P0751B, DSP (DSC)	001-010-380		X
B14	05P0751A, DSP (NBDP)	005-963-310		X
B17	05P0744, RELAY	005-963-230		X

Transceiver unit FS-2570T

F U R U N O	Model	FS-2570T	
	Unit	TRANSCEIVER UNIT	
ELECTRICAL PARTS LIST			
Aug-02	Blk.No.		

SYMBOL	TYPE	CODE No.	REMARKS	SHIPPABLE ASSEMBLY
	PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD			
B2	05P0731, T-I/F	005-963-050		X
B3	05P0732B, T-CPU	001-033-810		X
B4	05P0733, TX/RX	005-963-090		X
B5, B18	05P0734A, W/R	001-005-370		X
B6, B17	05P0739A, PA	005-956-570		X
B7	05P0736A, TX-FIL	005-963-170		X
B8	05P0737A, SW-REG	001-005-390		X
B9	05P0743, MB	005-516-340		X
B10	05P0746, PRESEL	005-963-250		X
B11	05P0747, REF OSC	005-963-270		X
B12	05P0744, RELAY	005-963-230		X
B13	05P0751B, DSP (DSC)	001-010-380		X
B14	05P0751A, DSP (NBDP)	005-963-310		X
B15	05P0738, DRV	005-516-280		X
B16	05P0740, COMB	005-516-320		X

F U R U N O

Control unit FS-2571C

FURUNO	Model	FS-2571C		
	Unit	CONTROL UNIT		
ELECTRICAL PARTS LIST				
	Blk.No.			

SYMBOL	TYPE	CODE No.	REMARKS	SHIPPABLE ASSEMBLY
	PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD			
B2	05P0810, PANEL	001-031-390		X
B3	05P0811A, C-CPU	001-033-850		X
B4	05P0812A, C-IF	001-033-900		X

Control unit FS-5070T

FURUNO	Model	FS-5070T	
	Unit		
ELECTRICAL PARTS LIST		TRANSCEIVER UNIT	
	Blk.No.		

SYMBOL	TYPE	CODE No.	REMARKS	SHIPPABLE ASSEMBLY
	PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD			
B2	05P0757, T-I/F	001-031-480		X
B3	05P0732B, T-CPU	001-033-810		X
B5	05P0733, TX/RX	005-963-090		X
B6, B26	05P0734A, W/R	001-005-370		X
B17 to 20	05P0739A, PA	005-956-570		X
B13	05P0741, TX-FIL	001-031-570		X
B12	05P0737A, SW-REG	001-035-390		X
B8	05P0759, MB	005-966-060		X
B10, 11	05P0744, RELAY	005-963-310		X
B25	05P0751A, DSP (DSC)	001-010-380		X
B9	05P0751B, DSP (NBDP)	005-963-310		X
B14	05P0738A, DRV	005-966-210		X
B21, 22	05P0740, COMB	005-516-320		X
B4	05P0760, TX	005-031-510		X
B7	05P0762, RX-FIL	005-031-540		X
B15	05P0764, PWR	005-966-020		X
B16	05P0765, DIV	005-966-030		X
B24	05P0758, TB	005-966-050		X

Parts Location

FS-1570T

05P0744
RELAY Board

05P0733
TX/RX Board

05P0737A
SW-REG Board

05P0746
PRESEL Board

05P0734A
W/R Board

05P0747
REF OSC
Board

05P0742
MB Board
(underneath)

05P0736
TX FIL Board

05P0735
PA Board

05P0751A
DSP Board
(for NBDP)

05P0731
T-I/F Board

05P0751B
DSP Board

05P0732B
T-CPU Board

Transcceiver unit FS-2570T

05P0738
DRV

05P0739A
PA

05P0737A
SW-REG

05P0739A
PA

05P0744
RELAY

05P0734A
W/R (option)

05P0734A
W/R

05P0747
REF OSC

05P0743
M-B
(behind)

05P0736A
TX FIL

05P0740
COMB

05P0746
PRESEL

05P0733
TX/RX

05P0751A
DSP
(NBDP)

05P0751B
DSP
(DSC)

05P0731
T-I/F

05P0732B
T-CPU

Transceiver unit FS-5070T (1)

05P0741
TX-FIL Board

(Inside)
05P0737A
SW-REG Board

05P0744
RELAY Board

Transceiver unit FS-5070T (2)

05P0740
COMB Board

(Inside)
COMB

05P0739A
PA Board

05P0762
RX-FIL Board

05P0734A
W/R Board

05P0733
TX-RX Board

05P0760
TX Board

05P0732B
T-CPU Board

(Inside)
05P0764
PWR Board

05P0738A
DRV Board

05P0765
DIV Board

(Upper)
05P0758
TB Board,
(Lower)
05P0757
T-I/F Board

05P0759
MB Board
(underneath)

05P0751A
DSP Board
(NBDP)

05P0751B
DSP Board
(DSC)

AP-29

Control unit FS-2571C

05P0810
PANEL Board

05P0811A
C-CPU Board

05P0812A
C-IF Board

SPECIFICATIONS OF SSB RADIOTELEPHONE
FS-1570/2570/5070

1 MF/HF DIGITAL RADIOTELEPHONE

1.1 GENERAL

1.1.1	Communication system	Full-duplex (FS-5070 only), semi-duplex or simplex
1.1.2	Class of emission	J3E: Telephone
		J2B (F1B): DSC and NBDP
		H3E: reception only
1.1.3	Frequency range	100.00 kHz to 29,999.99 kHz
1.1.4	Number of channel	User programmable: 256 TX/RX pairs
		All ITU channels incorporated (include DSC/NBDP channel)
		2182 kHz (single action)
1.1.5	Display method	Monochrome LCD (180 x 96 dots)
1.1.6	Backlight	8 tones
1.1.7	Contrast	64 steps
1.1.8	Warming up	1 minute approx. (oven 20 minutes approx.)

1.2 TRANSMITTER

1.2.1	Frequency range	1,606.5 kHz to 26.175 MHz (100 Hz step)	
1.2.2	RF output power	FS-1570:	1.6 kHz-4 MHz: 75/100 Wpep (J3E, J2B)
			4.0-26.175 MHz, 150 Wpep (J3E, J2B)
		FS-2570:	1.6-4.00 MHz, 75/100/200 Wpep (J3E, J2B)
			4.0-26.175 MHz, 150 Wpep (J3E, J2B)
		FS-5070:	1.6-4.0 MHz, 400 Wpep (J3E, J2B)
			4kHz-26.175 MHz: 500 Wpep (J3E), 400 Wpep (J2B)
1.2.3	Frequency error	Within ±10 Hz	
1.2.4	Modulation AF response	350 Hz to 2.7 kHz (SSB)	
1.2.5	Modulation system	Low power balanced modulation	
1.2.6	AF Input	-46 dBm/600 ohm (Handset/Microphone)	
1.2.7	Line in	0 dBm/600 ohm	

1.3 RECEIVER

1.3.1	Receiving system	Double-conversion superheterodyne
1.3.2	Frequency range	100 kHz-29,999.99 kHz (10 Hz step)
1.3.3	Sensitivity	Input level at 10 ohm+250 pF (below 4 MHz) and 50 ohm
		(above 4MHz) to produce SINAD 20 dB

Frequency Range	J3E/H3E
100 kHz to 300 kHz	35 dBµV
300 kHz to 1.6 MHz	25 dBµV
1.6 MHz to 4.0 MHz	13 dBµV
4.0 MHz to 30 MHz	7 dBµV

1.4	Intermediate frequency	1st: 72,455 kHz, 2nd: 455 kHz
1.5	Selectivity	J3E: 2.4kHz at -6dB, H3E: 6kHz at -6dB, J2B (F1B): 300Hz at –6dB
1.6	Inter-modulation	Better than 80 dBμV
1.7	Spurious response	Better than 70 dB
1.8	AGC	SLOW/FAST/OFF
1.9	BFO frequency	Telex/DSC: 1,700 Hz, Facsimile: 1,900 Hz
1.10	Audio output power	
	FS-1570/2570	Internal speaker: 3W/8 ohm, External speaker: 4W/4 ohm
	FS-5070	Internal speaker: 1W/8 ohm, External speaker: 3W/4 ohm
	FS-1570/2570/5070	Handset: 2.5mW/150 ohm, Line output: 0 dBm/600 ohm
1.11	Standard features	Noise Blanker, Voice-activated squelch, Pre-selector

2 DSC/WATCH KEEPING RECEIVER

2.1 DIGITAL SELECTIVE CALLING

2.1.1	Frequency shift	Space: 1785.0 ± 0.5 Hz, Mark: 1615.0 ± 0.5 Hz
2.1.2	Baud rate	100 bps ± 30 x 10^{-6}
2.1.3	Protocol	FS-1570/2570: ITU-R Rec.M493-10, M541-8, M1082-1
		FS-5070: ITU-R Rec.493-11, 541-9
2.1.4	Modulation	AFSK
2.1.5	Distress alarm	3.5 s to 4.5 s self-repetition
2.1.6	Distress alarm memory	50 messages

2.2 DSC/WATCH RECEIVER (FS-1570/2570)

2.2.1	Frequency range	
	DISTRESS	2187.5/ 8414.5 and 4207.5/ 6312/12577/16804.5 kHz
	ROUTINE	2187.5 kHz
2.2.2	Class of emission	F1B, J2B
2.2.3	Antenna impedance	50 ohm
2.2.4	Local oscillator	1st: F+54,455 kHz, 2nd: 54,000 kHz, 3rd: 456.7 kHz
2.2.5	Frequency stability	±10 Hz
2.2.6	Intermediate frequency	1st: 54,455 kHz, 2nd: 455 kHz
2.2.7	Selectivity	-6 dB: 270 Hz to 300 Hz, -30 dB: within ± 380 Hz,
		-60 dB: within ± 550 Hz
2.2.8	Receiving system	Double-conversion superheterodyne
2.2.9	Radiation	within 4 nW
2.2.10	RX error rate	1 % or less at 1 μV input voltage
2.2.11	Spurious response	31.6mV non-modulated at 10μV input voltage,
		at error rate within 1%
2.2.12	Scanning reception	max. 6 frequencies within 2 s (MF/HF)
2.2.13	Diagnosis	Transmit high frequency signal of DSC

2.3 DSC/WATCH RECEIVER (FS-5070)

2.3.1	Frequency range	
	DISTRESS	2187.5/ 8414.5 and 4207.5/ 6312/12577/16804.5 kHz
	ROUTINE	1,606.5 kHz to 27.5 MHz
2.3.2	Class of emission	F1B, J2B
2.3.3	Antenna impedance	50 ohm
2.3.4	Local oscillator	1st: F+54,455 kHz, 2nd: 54,000 kHz, 3rd: 456.7 kHz
2.3.5	Frequency stability	±10 Hz
2.3.6	Intermediate frequency	1st: 54,455 kHz, 2nd: 455 kHz
2.3.7	Selectivity	-6 dB: 270 Hz to 300 Hz, -30 dB: within ± 380 Hz, -60 dB: within ± 550 Hz
2.3.8	Receiving system	Double-conversion superheterodyne
2.3.9	Radiation	within 2 nW
2.3.10	RX error rate	1 % or less at 1 µV input voltage
2.3.11	Spurious response	31.6mV non-modulated at 10µV input voltage, at error rate within 1%
2.3.12	Scanning reception	max. 6 frequencies within 2 s (MF/HF)
2.3.13	Diagnosis	Transmit high frequency signal of DSC

2.4 GENERAL WATCH KEEPING RECEIVER (FS-2570, option)

2.4.1	Frequency range	1,606.5 kHz to 27.5 MHz
2.4.2	Class of emission	J2B, F1B
2.4.3	Antenna impedance	50 ohms
2.4.4	Local oscillator	1st: F+54,455 kHz, 2nd: 54,000 kHz, 3rd: 456.7 kHz
2.4.5	Frequency stability	within ±10 Hz
2.4.6	Intermediate frequency	1st: 54,455 kHz, 2nd: 455 kHz
2.4.7	Selectivity	-6 dB: 270 Hz to 300 Hz, -30 dB: within ± 380 Hz, -60 dB: within ±550 Hz
2.4.8	Receiving system	Double-conversion superheterodyne
2.4.9	Radiation	within 2 nW
2.4.10	RX error rate	1 % or less at 1 µV input voltage
2.4.11	Spurious response	31.6 mV non-modulated at 10µV input voltage, at error rate within 1%
2.4.12	Scanning reception	max. 6 frequencies within 2 s (MF/HF)
2.4.13	Diagnosis	Transmit high frequency signal of DSC

3 NBDP FUNCTION (OPTION)

3.1 GENERAL

3.1.1	Communication mode	ARQ, FEC, DIRC (FSK)
3.1.2	Protocol	ITU-R M625-3, M476-5, M490, M491-1, M492-6
	ID code	4, 5, 9 column

	Line cord	4B/3Y (Intl.)
	Modulation	AFSK
	Tone frequency	1615/1785Hz ± 0.5 Hz (mark/space)
	Tracking range	±80 Hz

3.1.3 Applications

	Auto-reception	Setting timer and frequency (max. 10 settings available)
	Frequency scanning	10 group max., 20 station as each group
	User-channels	100 channels max.

3.2   TERMINAL UNIT IB-581 (FS-1570/2570)

3.2.1	Display	9.5" monochrome LCD, 680 x 480 dots
3.2.2	CPU	ALI M6117 (33 MHz)
3.2.3	Memory	Flash ROM 2 MB, DRAM 2 MB
3.2.4	FD Drive	1.44MB 3.5"
3.2.5	Keyboard	82 keys, IBM PS/2

3.3   TERMINAL UNIT IB-583

3.3.1	Display	10.4" color TFT LCD, 640 x 480 dots
3.3.2	CPU	HD6417615 (15.5 MHz)
3.3.3	Memory	Flash ROM: 1 MB, S-RAM: 256 KB
3.3.4	FD drive	1.44MB 3.5"
3.3.5	Keyboard	82 keys, IBM PS/2
3.3.6	Other functions	Text editor, FD control, Printer, Remote control for transceiver, Diagnosis

4   ANTENNA COUPLER (FS-1570/2570)

4.1	Tuning system	CPU controlled fully automatic tuning system
4.2	Frequency range	1.6 MHz to 27.5Hz
4.3	Input impedance	50 ohms
4.4	Antenna	10 m to 18 m wire or whip antenna
4.5	Power capability	150 W (FS-1570), 250 W (FS-2570)
4.6	VSWR	1.5 max
4.7	Tuning Speed	Within 15 s
4.8	Dummy Load	FS-1570: 10 ohms+250 pF/100W
		FS-2570: 10 ohms+250 pF/200W

5   ANTENNA COUPLER (FS-5070)

5.1	Tuning system	CPU controlled fully automatic tuning system
5.2	Frequency range	1.6MHz to 29.9 MHz
5.3	Input impedance	50 ohm (viewed from transceiver)
5.4	Antenna	10 m to 18 m wire or whip antenna + wire
5.5	Pre-tuning power	10 W

5.6   VSWR   less than 1.5

5.7   Tuning time   0.2 to 2 seconds typical (within 2 to 15 seconds)

5.8   Antenna BK relay   Internal, optional supply

6   INTERFACE

6.1   Input data sentences   IEC 61162-1 (NMEA 0183-3)

       Ship's Position (L/L)   GGA>RMC>GLL

       Time   ZDA

7   POWER SUPPLY

7.1   Transceiver/control unit   FS-1570: 24 VDC, 0.8 A, max. 20A (TX)

                                   FS-2570: 24 VDC, 1.5 A, max. 35A (TX)

                                   FS-5070: 24 VDC, 3 A (RX), max. 35 A (TX)

7.2   Terminal unit   IB-581: 24VDC, 0.8 A

                                   IB-583: 24 VDC: 0.6 A

7.3   Printer (PP-510)   24 VDC: 1.5 A

7.4   AC/DC power supply unit   100/110/115/220/230 VAC, 1 phase, 50/60Hz

8   ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITION

8.1   Ambient temperature

       Indoor units   -15°C to +55°C

       Antenna coupler   -25°C to +55°C

8.2   Relative humidity   93% or less at 40°C

8.3   Degree of protection

       Control unit   IPX2 (panel), IPX0 (chassis)

       Transceiver/terminal unit   IPX0

       Antenna coupler   IPX5 (FS-1570/2570), IPX6 (FS-5070)

8.4   Bearing vibration   2 Hz-5Hz to 13.2 Hz: Amplitude: ±1 mm±10%

                                   13.2 Hz to 100 Hz: Max. acceleration 7m/s^2, fixed

9   COATING COLOR

9.1   Control/terminal unit   N3.0 (panel), 2.5GY5/1.5 (chassis)

9.2   Transceiver unit   2.5GY5/1.5

9.3   Antenna coupler   N9.5 (white)

This page is intentionally left blank .

INDEX

FURUNO

FURUNO ELECTRIC CO., LTD.
9-52 Ashihara-cho, Nishinomiya, 662-8580, Japan
Tel: +81 (798) 65-2111   Fax: +81 (798) 65-4200
www.furuno.co.jp

Publication No. DOCQA0073

Declaration of Conformity

0560

We   FURUNO ELECTRIC CO., LTD.

(Manufacturer)

9-52 Ashihara-Cho, Nishinomiya City, 662-8580, Hyogo, Japan

(Address)

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

MF/HF SSB Radiotelephone Types: FS-1570 and FS-2570

(Model name, type number)

to which this declaration relates conforms to the following standard(s) or normative document(s)

Standards

IMO Resolutions MSC.36(63), A.694(17)
IMO Resolutions MSC.68(68)/A3, A.806(19)
IMO MSC Circular MSC/Circ.862

ITU-R Recommendations   M.1173, M.1082-1, M.821-1, M.493-10, M.493-11, M.541-8, M.541-9, M.476-5, M491-1, M.492-6, M.625-3

Test standards

EN 300 338 V1.2.1: 1999-4, ETS 300 373: 1995-08,
ETS 300 373/A1: 1997-8 ,ETS 300 067:1990-11,
ETS 300 067/ A1:1993-11,EN 301 033 V1.1.1: 1998-08,
EN 60945: 2002-10 Ed.4, IEC 61162-1: 2000-07 Ed.2

(title and/or number and date of issue of the standard(s) or other normative document(s))

For assessment, see

- EC type-examination (Module B) certificate N°: 02212010 issued by Telefication, The Netherlands
- Product Quality System (Module D) certificate No. P 112 issued by Telefication, The Netherlands

This declaration is issued according to the provisions of European Council Directive 96/98/EC on marine equipment and the amending Directive 2008/67/EC.

On behalf of Furuno Electric Co., Ltd.

Takahiko Kusuda
Manager, QMS Secretariat
Quality Assurance Department

Nishinomiya City, Japan
September 11, 2009

(Place and date of issue)

(name and signature or equivalent marking of authorized person)

FURUNO

FURUNO ELECTRIC CO., LTD.
9-52 Ashihara-cho, Nishinomiya, 662-8580, Japan
Tel: +81 (798) 65-2111   Fax: +81 (798) 65-4200
www.furuno.co.jp

Publication No. DOCQA0074

Declaration of Conformity

0560

We   FURUNO ELECTRIC CO., LTD.

(Manufacturer)

9-52 Ashihara-Cho, Nishinomiya City, 662-8580, Hyogo, Japan

(Address)

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

HF/MF SSB Radiotelephone with integrated DSC and NBDP Type: FS-5070

(Model name, type number)

to which this declaration relates conforms to the following standard(s) or normative document(s)

Standards	Test standards
IMO Resolutions MSC.36(63), A.694(17)	EN 300 338 V1.2.1: 1999-04, EN 300 373-1 V1.2.1: 2002-10
IMO Resolutions MSC.68(68)/A3, A.806(19)	ETS 300 065/A1: 1998-9, ETS 300 067/A1: 1993-10
IMO MSC Circular MSC/Circ.862	EN 301 033 V1.1.1: 1998-08
	EN 60945: 2002-10 Ed.4, IEC 61162-1: 2000-07 Ed.2
ITU-R Recommendations M.1173, M.1082-1, M.493-11, M.541-9, M.476-5, M491-1, M.492-6, M.625-3	

(title and/or number and date of issue of the standard(s) or other normative document(s))

For assessment, see

* EC type-examination (Module B) certificate N°: 06212004 issued by Telefication, The Netherlands
* Product Quality System (Module D) certificate No. P 112 issued by Telefication, The Netherlands

This declaration is issued according to the provisions of European Council Directive 96/98/EC on marine equipment and the amending Directive 2008/67/EC.

On behalf of Furuno Electric Co., Ltd.

Takahiko Kusuda
Manager, QMS Secretariat
Quality Assurance Department

Nishinomiya City, Japan
September 11, 2009

(Place and date of issue)   (name and signature or equivalent marking of authorized person)